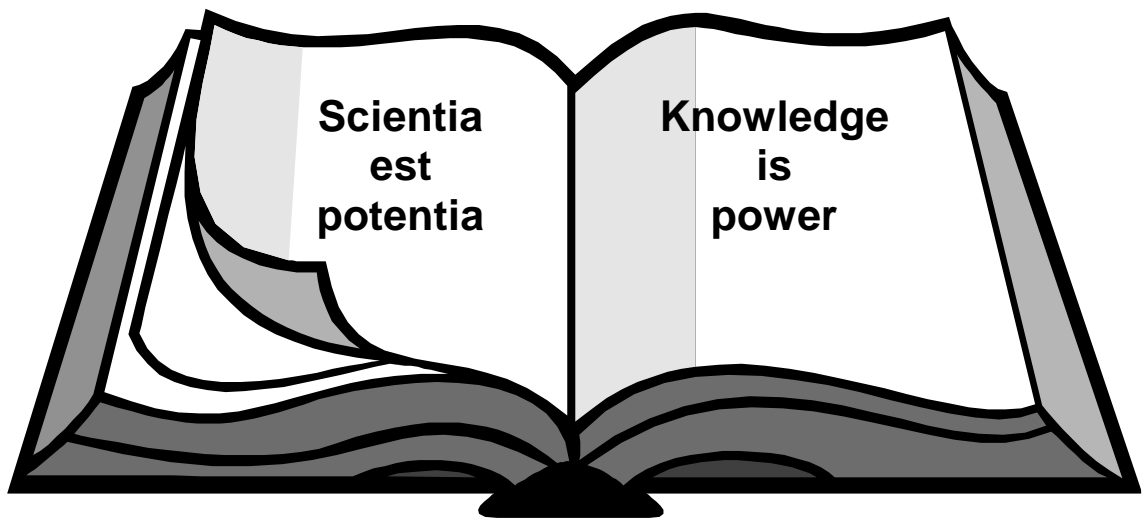


A. Z. TSISYK

THE LATIN LANGUAGE



Minsk BSMU 2015

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ЗДРАВООХРАНЕНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ
БЕЛОРУССКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ МЕДИЦИНСКИЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ
КАФЕДРА ЛАТИНСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

А. З. ЦИСЬК

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Учебно-методическое пособие

2-е издание



Минск БГМУ 2015

УДК 811.124 (811.111)-054.6 (075.8)
ББК 81.2 (Лат) (81.2 Англ-923)
Ц73

Рекомендовано Научно-методическим советом университета в качестве
учебно-методического пособия 16.09.2015 г., протокол № 1

Р е ц е н з е н т ы: канд. филол. наук, доц., зав. каф. классической филологии Белорусско-
го государственного университета Г. И. Шевченко; канд. филол. наук, доц., зав. каф. иностран-
ных языков Гродненского государственного медицинского университета Д. К. Кондратьев

Цисык, А. З.

Ц73 Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учеб.-метод. пособие / А. З. Цисык. – 2-е изд. –
Минск : БГМУ, 2015. – 212 с.

ISBN 978-985-567-313-3.

Состоит из фонетического раздела и трех основных разделов материалов — анатомического, фармацевтического и клинического. Каждый из этих разделов содержит теоретическую и практическую части, латинско-английский и английско-латинский словарь. С эквивалентами на английском языке представлены профессиональные медицинские выражения, латинские афоризмы и текст международного студенческого гимна «Гаудеамус». Первое издание вышло в 2010 году.

Предназначено для иностранных студентов, изучающих дисциплину «Латинский язык» на английском языке.

УДК 811.124 (811.111)-054.6 (075.8)
ББК 81.2 (Лат) (81.2 Англ-923)

Учебное издание

Цисык Андрей Зиновьевич

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Учебно-методическое пособие

На английском языке

2-е издание

Ответственный за выпуск **А. З. Цисык**

Переводчик **А. З. Цисык**

Компьютерный набор **Е. А. Чижик, Е. С. Швайко**

Компьютерная верстка **Н. М. Федорцовой**

Подписано в печать 17.09.15. Формат 60×84/16. Бумага писчая «Снегурочка».

Ризография. Гарнитура «Times».

Усл. печ. л. 12,32. Уч.-изд. л. 9,91. Тираж 120 экз. Заказ 566.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение: учреждение образования
«Белорусский государственный медицинский университет».

Свидетельство о государственной регистрации издателя, изготовителя,
распространителя печатных изданий № 1/187 от 18.02.2014.

Ул. Ленинградская, 6, 220006, Минск.

ISBN 978-985-567-313-3

© Цисык А. З., 2015

© УО «Белорусский государственный
медицинский университет», 2015

PREFACE

This manual is meant for English-speaking students of medical universities of the Republic of Belarus. Its structure corresponds to the syllabus presented in the State Educational Standard Plan for the subject “The Latin Language” taught in the medical universities. The manual has been composed in accordance with generally accepted patterns expressed in well-known manuals and textbooks of Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology.

The manual is divided into four parts — phonetics, the anatomical part with the main grammar rules, the pharmaceutical part and the clinical one.

Every real lesson, as it is generally known, has a uniform structure: checking the home task (orally and in writing), some explanation of a new topic, students’ work with exercises. The manual contains all necessary components for this work — grammar and terminological material, as well as exercises. In the latter, words are given in alphabetical order, and every lesson is provided with Latin-English and English-Latin glossaries. Such a distribution of educational material should help students in their work with exercises.

According to high school norms of studying linguistic subjects, students are to learn 30–40 new words at every lesson, although this word memorizing can be managed naturally only due to a strainuous efforts to do the homework. But then, this work is constantly facilitated by lexical affinity of equivalent words in Latin and English.

The main attention is paid to the anatomical and clinical terms, as namely these terms are and will be mainly needed of all wanted in daily medical practice of foreign students. That is why the pharmaceutical part of the manual is presented quite concisely. As to clinical terms, on the basis of well-known English medical dictionaries we sought to give the scientific definition of each terminological unit. Such an introduction into professional terminology judging by the students’ reaction has always been of great interest to them.

The subject “Medical Latin” is mastered and controlled chiefly in written form. So both proper spelling and grammar arrangement are of great value as spoken Latin is very simple. That’s why control tests at every lesson as well as summing up are performed only in written form.

The students should bear in mind, that only systematic work on the topic and vocabulary of every lesson on their own can result in success.

The author expresses his sincere acknowledgement to the senior tutor of the Department of Foreign Languages of the Belarusian State Medical University Novitskaja Tatiana for her perpetual assistance in the work at the manual.

INTRODUCTION TO THE SUBJECT

The subject you are going to study is the Latin Language. To some point, this name is relative, because nowadays there are no people speaking Latin. From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 464 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that's why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words.

In the new history of Europe, beginning with the Roman state's collapse, the Latin language was used for 1000 years as the language of state establishments, Catholic religion, education and science, especially at universities founded in the 12th century. Every university would have a medical faculty. Diplomas and theses as well as the process of education itself were in Latin. As to medicine, Latin became the international professional language of physicians. Medical terms rooting from Latin and Greek are presented in any European language as borrowings. What's more, there exist lists of biological and medical terms, forming the so-called Nomenclatures, approved at the International Congresses of scientists — anatomical, histological, microbiological etc. Latin terms of those nomenclatures are used in education and scientific literature. That's why future doctors must study fundamentals of international medical terminology, based on Latin grammar and Latin and Greek word building elements (roots, stems and affixes).

Among modern European languages English, and, particularly, medical English, contains a great number of Latin and latinized Greek words. It becomes evident when comparing medical glossaries of Latin and English. To prove this compare some medical terms in Latin and English.

Latin anatomical terms	English equivalents
abdomen	abdomen
alaris	alar
canalis	canal
cardiacus	cardiac
cavitas	cavity
lobus	lobe
longus	long
tonsilla	tonsil
vomer	vomer

Latin pharmaceutical terms	English equivalents
acidum	acid
Acidum aceticum	acetic acid
aether	ether
cortex	cortex
dilutus	diluted
herba	herb
Mentha	mint
pilula	pill
tinctura	tincture

Latin clinical terms	English equivalents	Meaning
adenitis	adenitis	inflammation of gland
bradyphagia	bradyphagia	slowing of swallowing
cancerophobia	cancerophobia	fear of cancer
cholecystogramma	cholecystogram	results of gallbladder X-ray examination
haematuria	hematuria	blood in the urine
lipuria	lipuria	lipid excretion by urine
otogenus	otogenic	developing from the ear
tachycardia	tachycardia	abnormally fast heart rate
trichalgia	trichalgia	feeling of pain in the hair

As we see, in clinical terminology using Latin terms is particularly preferable, because one Latin word can change the whole group of English words, expressing some pathological phenomenon.

The proximity of medical terms in Latin and English can be explained very simply: it is well known, that English medical terminology developed from Medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed ancient Latin and Greek medical lexical units. Both Latin and ancient Greek are an inexhaustible source for a new term building, and this process keeps on going. Everybody striving to become a doctor must master Latin and fundamentals of international medical Terminology.

The course of Latin at the Medical University you are going to study consists of 3 main parts, which correspond to the main groups of medical

terminology: anatomical (and partly histological), pharmaceutical and clinical ones. This material is divided into 2 academic terms (semesters); each lesson is once a week. The first term is devoted to learning phonetic and main grammar rules of Latin anatomical terminology. During the second term the students get acquainted with the fundamentals of pharmaceutical and clinical terminology. Each new lesson includes your teacher's explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for you is your home task. A specific feature of studying during both terms is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 3 written tests (for 45 and 90 minutes) are provided. The purpose of the first one is to control the knowledge of about 50 % of the course material, and that of the second one — mastering the entire material of each part of the course. There exist uniform (for all groups and teachers) rules of the control assessment and you will be acquainted with them. So, at every lesson, you will first work orally, checking the home task with your teacher, and then your knowledge will be controlled in written form (while books and notebooks are closed). The principal way to this knowledge is your own persistent work with your textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar. And, without doubt, every student can succeed in learning Latin and fundamentals of medical terminology, if his or her efforts are steady and diligent.

Part I

PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION

Lesson 1

THE LATIN ALPHABET. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS

§ 1. LATIN ALPHABET

The Latin alphabet includes 25 letters.

Letters	Names	Latin Pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
A a	a [Λ]	[a]	vas [vΛs]	vessel
B b	be [be]	[b]	bulbus [bú:lbus]	bulb
C c	tse [tse]	[ts] [k]	coccyx [kó:ktsiks]	coccyx, coccygeal bone
D d	de [de]	[d]	dens [dens]	tooth
E e	e [e]	[e]	vertebra [vé:rtebrΛ]	vertebra
F f	ef [ef]	[f]	frontalis [frontā:lis]	frontal
G g	ge [ge]	[g]	genu [gé:nu]	knee
H h	ha [hΛ]	[h like English heart, here]	hepar [hé:pΛr]	liver
I i	i [i]	[i]	incisura [incizú:rΛ]	incisure
J j	yot [yot]	[j] like English yes, you	jugularis [yuguláris]	jugular
K k	ka [kΛ]	[k]	skeleton [ské:leton]	skeleton
L l	el [el]	l [as in English life, love]	cellula [tsé:llulΛ]	cell
M m	em [em]	[m]	mors [mors]	death
N n	en [en]	[n]	nodus [nó:dus]	node
O o	o [o]	[o]	coronarius [coronárius]	coronary
P p	pe [pe]	[p]	palpebra [pálpebrΛ]	eyelid
Q q	ku [ku]	[kv] together with vowel u and vowel a, e, i, o, u after u	Quercus [kvé:rkus] quartus [kvá:rtus]	oak fourth
R r	er [er]	[r]	renalis [rená:lis]	renal
S s	es [es]	[s] [z]	sinus [sí:nus] incisura [intsizú:rΛ]	sinus, hollow incisure
T t	te [te]	[t] [ts]	tibia [tí:biΛ] articulatio [artikulá:tsio]	tibia, shine-bone articulation, joint
U u	u [u]	u	succus [sú:kkus]	juice
V v	ve [ve]	v	valva [vá:lvΛ]	valve
X x	iks [iks]	ks	dexter [dé:kster]	right, right-hand
Y y	ipson [ípson]	i	gyrus [gí:rus]	gyrus, convolution
Z z	zeta [zétΛ]	z	zygomaticus [zigomátikus]	zygomatic

The last two letters, borrowed by Romans from Greek alphabet, are used, as a rule, in the words of Greek origin.

§ 2. DIVISION OF LATIN SOUNDS

Six letters of the alphabet (a, e, i, o, u, y) correspond to vowels and nineteen (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z) denote consonants.

§ 3. PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS

Vowels in Latin, except “y”, sound practically the same, as the sounds of their names in the alphabet (see above). So, the letter “a” sounds [a], the letter e — sounds [e] and so on. One may add, that the stressed vowel corresponds in pronunciation to a long one in English, compare:

cavitas [cá:vitʌs] — cavity

apertura [ʌpertú:rʌ] — aperture, opening

venosus [venó:zus] — venous

tonsilla [tonsí:llʌ] — tonsil

The letter “y” (ipsilon) sounds as the Latin letter “i” (that’s why the Frenchmen call y “igrek”, i. e. “the Greek “i”):

tympanum [tí:mpanum] — drum

All the above given examples also indicate, that Latin vowels don’t practically change their sound quality in different syllables. But the vowel “i” placed before the vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” when making a common syllable with them, changes its sound characteristics: now it sounds similar to the English vowel “y” in the *yard*, *yours*, *yourself*, *youthful*, let’s compare:

maialis [mʌjá:lis] — referring to May

ieiunum [jejú:num] — jejunum

major [má:jor] — greater

As in such cases the letter “i” sounds different compared to the vowel “i”, the scientists in the XVI century decided to introduce a new letter **j** into the Latin alphabet, so as to substitute the vowel “i”: *majalis*, *jejunum*, *major* and so on. It is common to use the letter “j” in medical and biological terms. Let’s, however, note that in the terms of the Greek origin the vowel “i” never makes a syllable with the subsequent vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” and therefore the letter **j** cannot be used:

iater [iá:ter] physician, commonly *geriater*, *paediater*, *psychiater*, *phthisiater* and so on — these terms will be discussed in the clinical part of our course. We can also mention the noun *Iodum* [ió:dum] — iodine (Latin names of chemical elements are to be written with capital letters).

§ 4. PRONUNCIATION OF TWO VOWEL COMBINATION

Two vowels following each other can form the so-called diphthong that is pronounced as a combination of two vowels pronounced in one syllable.

So **au** [au] is pronounced as in the English words *down, sound, south, compound* and so on:

auris [á:ris] — ear, caudalis [kaudá:lis] — caudal, trauma [tráuma] — injury, wound.

Eu [eu] has no analogue in English, so its pronunciation must be learnt by the spelling memorizing. However, you should pay attention to the letter combination “**eu**” at the end of words, where it doesn’t make a diphthong and each vowel is pronounced separately:

sigmoideus [sigmoí:deus] — sigmoid

corpus luteum [kó:rpus lú:teum] — corpus luteum (yellow body)

Two vowels can also form a digraph, which sounds like the Latin vowel “**e**”:

ae — [e] — costae [kó:ste] — ribs

oe — [e] — oedema [edé:mΛ] — swelling

If each vowel in such digraphs is to be pronounced separately, two dots are placed over the letter **e**:

aër [á:er] — air, Aloë (names of medical plants are to be written in Latin with the capital letter) [á:loe] — aloe.

§ 5. PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS

Consonants **b, d, f, h, k, m, n, p, q, s, t, v, x** are similar in pronouncing to English. The difference is that consonants **p, t, k** are not aspirated, as in English. Pronunciation of the rest consonants is to be explained.

The letter **Cc** before the vowels “**e**”, “**i**”, “**y**” and digraphs **ae, oe** is pronounced as [ts], but before the vowels “**a**”, “**o**”, “**u**” and consonants (except **h**) is pronounced as [k]:

cervicalis [tserviká:lis] — cervical

caecum [tsé:kum] — caecum

coccyx [kó:ktsiks] — coccyx, cockerel bone

The letter **Gg** is always pronounced like [g] in English *get, glass, disguise*:

gaster [gá:ster] — stomach

genu [gé:nu] — knee

vagina [vΛgí:nΛ] — vagina

The letter **Hh** is pronounced approximately as h in English:

homo [hó:mo] — man

hyoideus [hioí:deus] — sublingual

The letter **Ll** is pronounced in someway softer than in English and is palatalized both before vowels and consonants (as in the pronunciation of such English words as **look** and **live**):

albus [á:lbus] — white

cellula [tsé:llulΛ] — cell

palatinus [pΛlΛtínus] — palatine

pyloricus [piló:rikus] — pyloric

The letter **Rr** in Latin is pronounced always clearly and distinctly not as the English **Rr** [a:]

dexter [dé:xter] — right

posterior [posté:rior] — back

renalis [rená:lis] — renal

The letter **Ss** between two vowels is pronounced like [z], in other cases — as [s]:

basis [bá:zis] — base

sinus [sí:nus] — sinus, hollow

The letter **Tt** is commonly pronounced as [t] without aspiration: tinctura [tinktú:r^] — tincture. But in such a letter combination, where **i** follows **t** plus some other vowel, **t** is pronounced as [ts]:

articulatio [artikulá:tsio] — joint

protuberantia [protuberá:ntsia] — protuberance

There is, however, an exception from this last rule: if before the combination **ti** + vowel the consonants “**s**” or “**x**” are placed, then the pronunciation of **ti** is [ti]:

digestio [digé:stio] — digestion

ostium [ó:stium] — orifice.

The letter **Zz** is pronounced as [z]:

zona [zó:n^] — zone

horizontalis [horizontá:lis] — horizontal

But in two cases we pronounce this letter as [ts]: influenza [influé:nts^] — grippus, influenza and Zincum [tsí:nkum] — zink.

§ 6. PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANT COMBINATIONS

Two consonants can form a digraph, which is pronounced as a consonant:

ch is pronounced as [kh]:

chorda [khó:rd^] — cord

charta [khá:rt^] — paper

ph is pronounced as [f]:

lymphaticus [limfá:ticus] — lymphatic

pharynx [fa:rinks] — pharynx

rh is pronounced as [r]:

rhinorrhagia [rinoragí:a] — rhinorrhagia (nasal bleeding)

rhomboideus [romboí:deus] — rhomboid

th is pronounced as [t]:

thorax [tó:raks] — chest

labyrinthus [l^birí:ntus] — labyrinth

The combination of three consonants **sch** is pronounced as [skh]:

schema [skhé:m^] — scheme

ischiadicus [iskhiá:dikus] — sciatic

§ 7. PRONUNCIATION OF SOME LETTER COMBINATIONS

The letter combination **ngu** is pronounced as [ngv], if the vowel **u** is followed by one of the vowels a, e, i, u:

lingua [lí:ngvΛ] — tongue, language

unguentum [ungvé:ntum] — ointment

unguis [ú:ngvis] — nail

But if a consonant follows “**u**”, then **ngu** is pronounced as [ngu]:

angulus [á:ngulus] — angle

lingula [lí:ngulΛ] — lingula, little tongue

The letter combination **qu** with the following vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) is pronounced as [kv] with a subsequent vowel:

squamosus [skvamó:zus] — squamosal

aqueductus [akvedú:tus] — aqueduct

Quercus [kvé:rkus] — oak

§ 8. EXERCISES

1. *Read the following words paying special attention to the vowel pronunciation:*

forámen (opening), ligaméntum (ligament), dúctus (duct), interglobuláris (interglobular), longitudinális (longitudinal), massetéricus (masticatory, chewing), pylóricus (pyloric), synoviális (synovial), tympánicus (tympanic), síníster (left), zygomáticus (zygomatic)

2. *Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letter c:*

cáput (head), cervicális (cervical), cérebrum (brain), cútis (skin), Ácidum acéticum (acetic acid), síccus (dry), fácies (face, surface), coccygéus (coccygeal), coerúleus (blue), caécum (caecum), búccae (cheeks), carcinóma (cancer), sáccus lacrimális (lacrimal sac)

3. *Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letters g and q:*

nérvus hypoglóssus (hypoglossal nerve), gánglion pterygopalatínium (pterygopalatine ganglion), rámi gingiváles (gingival branches), gánglion geniculátum (geniculate ganglion), gýrus anguláris (angular gyrus), húmor aquósus (aqueous humor), aquedúctus vestibuli (vestibular aqueduct), cósta quinta (fifth rib), márgo squamósus (squamosal border)

4. *Read correctly the following words, paying special attention to the consonants j, s and t:*

ála májor (major wing), flexúra duodenojejunális (duodenojejunal flexure), júga alveolária (alveolar yokes), articulátio compósita (complex joint), óstium atrioventriculáre dextrum (right atrioventricular orifice), incisúra juguláris (jugular notch), segméntum basále antérius (anterior basal segment), básiis óssis sácri (base of sacrum), míxtio pro potióne (mixture for drinking).

5. *Read correctly the following words paying attention to combinations of vowels:*

cóstae spúriæ (false ribs), forámen caécum línguae (caecum foramen of tongue), Óleum Eucalýpti (eucalyptus oil), oedéma larýngis (edema of larynx), nérvus auriculáris (auricular nerve), aponeurósis línguae (lingual aponeurosis), céllulae haematopoëticae (hematogenic cells), glándulae oesophagéae (oesophageal glands), pneumonía mígrans (migratory pneumonia).

6. *Read attentively the following words with vowel and consonant combinations:*

nérvus ischiádicus (sciatic nerve), Strophanthínium (strophanthin), Synthomycínium (synthomycin), fébris haemorrhágica (hemorrhagic fever), ráphe pharýngis (pharyngeal raphe), ásthma bronchiále (bronchial asthma), vértebrae thorácicae (thoracic vertebrae), unguéntum ophthálmicum (ophthalmic ointment), labyrínthus ethmoidális (ethmoidal labyrinth), Methylénium coerúleum (blue methylen), rhizóma Glycyrrhízae (rhizome of licorice), Schizándra chinénsis (chinense magnolia vine), sectiónes hypothálami (sections of hypothalamus), dúctus cholédochus (common bile duct), trúncus brachiocephálicus (brachiocephalis trunk), distántia trochantérica (trochanteric distance), hemisphérium cerebélli (hemisphere of cerebellum), tubérculum pharyngéum (pharyngeal tubercle), véna saphéna (saphenous vein), cirrhósis hépatis (biliary cirrhosis), typhus abdominális (abdominal typhus), nephrolithíasis chrónica (chronic nephrolithiasis), foétor ex óre seu halitósis (fetid or offensive breath or halitosis)

Lesson 2 **ACCENT RULES**

§ 9. ACCENT IN THE WORDS CONSISTING OF TWO SYLLABLES

If a word consists of two syllable, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

cós-ta, lá-rynx, nér-vus

§ 10. ACCENT IN POLYSYLLABIC WORDS. LENGTH AND BREVIDY OF THE SECOND END SYLLABLE

In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or brevity of the second word end syllable: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it cannot be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

The length and brevity of the second syllable and particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch — if it is short, compare:

ā – ä, ē – ě, ī – ĭ, ō – ǒ, ū – ŭ, y – ŷ.

So, if we find such words as forāmen, incisūra, hepatītis etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine, that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

If in the dictionary we see such words as lamīna, encephālon, thoracīcus etc., we understand that the third syllable from the end must be stressed: lámīna, encéphalon, thorácicus.

Now, we should ask a crucial question: do we have to consult the dictionary about the quality of the second end syllable in every case or not? Fortunately, there exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply, of the second end vowel. First of all, there are suffixes containing vowels which are long or short by nature. Such suffixes called accordingly “long” or “short” can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

§ 11. LONG SUFFIXES

Before listing the suffixes, one must notice that part of these suffixes is always long or short in all kinds of terminology — anatomical, pharmaceutical, clinical. As we are going to begin with anatomical terminology and continue studying it during the first semester, it would be proper to begin with the suffixes in anatomical terms.

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-āl-	dentālis horizontālis	dental horizontal	encephālon (brain)
-ār-	articulāris mandibulāris	auricular mandibular	
-āt-	caudātus meātus	caudate passage	prostāta (prostate)
-īn-	palatīnus vagīna	palatine vagina, sheath	lamīna (lamine), femīna (women), retīna (retina), dens serotīnus (wisdom tooth), nervus trigemīnus (trigeminal nerve), termīnus (term)
-īv-	gingīva dens incisīvus	gingiva, gum incisor tooth	
-ōs-	aponeurōsis petrōsus	aponeurosis stony	
-ūr-	incisūra sutūra	incisure, slit or notch suture, line of junction	

§ 12. SHORT SUFFIXES

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions
-iāc-	cardiācus coeliācus	cardiac coeliac	
-īc-	gastrīcus tunīca	gastric tunic, coat	vesīca (bladder)

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions
-ōl-	alveōlus foveōla	alveolus, satchet (tooth) foveola	
-ūl-	clavicūla mandibūla	clavicle mandible	

§ 13. SUFFIXES WITH SIMILAR QUALITY OF VOWEL IN ALL PARTS OF MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

As mentioned above, some suffixes can always be long or short in all parts of medical terminology, compare:

Suffix	Anatomical terms	Pharmaceutical terms	Clinical terms
-āt-	musculū levātor (levator muscle)	Aqua destillāta (distilled water)	Caries exacerbāta (caries exacerbated)
-ōs-	aponeurōsis (aponeurosis)	spirituōsus (spirituous)	erythrocytōsis (erythrocytosis, increased account of red blood cells in the blood)
-ūr-	junctūra (juncture, junction)	tinctūra (tincture)	fractūra (fracture)
-ūl-	angūlus (angle)	Betūla (birch)	furuncūlus (furuncle, boil)

§ 14. THE WAY OF ACCENT DETERMINATION WHEN THE SECOND END VOWEL IS NOT A PART OF A LONG OR A SHORT SUFFIX

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary, compare:

forāmen (opening), orbīta (eye socket), skelēton (skeleton), suprēmus (highest), tuberositas (tuberosity), urēter (ureter) and so on.

§ 15. SOME RULES OF SYLLABLE LENGTH DETERMINATION

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules.

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants:

ligamentum (ligament)
maxilla (maxilla, upper jaw)
sinister (left)

But, when the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being **b, c, d, g, p, t** and the second is **l** or **r**, this short vowel is pronounced short:

vertēbra (vertebra), cerēbrum (cerebrum), os triquētrum (triquetrum bone), mūltiplex (multiple). And when this vowel is long by nature, our rule is valid:
cicātrix (cicatrix, scar), psychiātri (psychiatrists), salūbris (curative).

2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs **au**, **eu** or **ae**, **oe**: amoeba (ameba), diaeta (diet), Althaea (althea).

3. The syllable is long when its vowel is placed before the consonants x or z:

reflēxus (reflex), Oryza (rise).

§ 16. THE RULES OF SYLLABLE BREVITY

1. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before another vowel:

linēa (line), superīor (higher, upper)

cornūa (horns), Aluminīum (aluminium)

There are, however, two points of exceptions from this rule:

1) in some words of Greek origin the last but one vowel was formed from the diphthong **ae**, that's why it keeps the length of the syllable:

coccygaeus → coccygēus

peritonaeum → peritonēum

You have to memorize these exceptions:

perinēum (perineum, fork) peritonēum (peritoneum), trachēa (trachea), anconēus (anconeus muscle), coccygēus (coccygeal), esophagēus (esophageal), glutēus (gluteal), laryngēus (laryngeal), meningēus (meningeal), peronēus (peroneal, fibular), pharyngēus (pharyngeal).

2) in clinical terms with the ending **-ia** their vowel **i** and the syllable with it are stressed:

dyskinesía (dyskinesia, disturbance of movement), otoscopía (otoscopy, internal examination of the ear).

Some peculiarities of this exception will be discussed in the clinical part of our course.

2. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before the digraphs ch, ph, rh, th:

ductus choledōchus (bile duct)

nephrolīthus (renal calculus)

§ 17. EXERCISES

1. *Determine the stress syllable paying attention to the long and short suffixes:*

incisūra ethmoidālis (ethmoidal notch), tubercūlum jugulāre (jugular tubercle), lingūla sphenoidālis (sphenoidal lingula), semicanālis tubae auditīvae (canal for auditory tube), meātus acustīcus externus (external acoustic meatus), lamīna perpendiculāris (perpendicular plate), facies palatīna (palatine surface), vesīca biliāris (gallbladder), glandūlae endocrīnae (endocrine glands), junctūrae cingūli pelvīci (joints of pelvic girdle), urethra masculīna (male urethra), spina scapūlae (spine of scapula), intestīnum tenue (small intestine), alveolus dentālis (tooth socket), tunīca mucōsa linguae (mucous membrane of tongue), arcus

dentālis mandibulāris (mandibular dental arcade), trigōnum submandibulāre (submandibular triangle)

2. *Write down and determine the stressed syllable paying attention to the natural length or brevity of the last but one vowel:*

tubercūlum anterius (anterior tubercle), incisūrae costāles (costal slits), vertēbra thoracīca (thoracic vertebra), ductus choledōchus (bile duct), forāmen apīcis radīcis dentis (apical foramen of the root of the tooth), vesīca urinaria (urinary bladder), Oleum Ricīni (castor oil), Sirūpus Rubi idaei (raspberry syrup), Solutio lōdi spirituōsa (iodine spirituous solution), eczēma allergīcum (allergic eczema), stomatītis chronīca (chronic stomatitis), systēma condūcens cordis (conducting system of heart), apertūra thorācis inferior (lower opening of chest), muscūlus levātor fornīcis (muscle raising fornix), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian), facies anterior partis petrōsae (anterior surface of petrous part), canāles palatīni minōres (lesser palatine canals), systēma lymphoideum (lymphoid system)

3. *Write down the terms, put the signs of length or brevity over the last but one syllable (using if necessary vocabularies of this manual) and determine in writing the accent:*

ligamentum popliteum obliquum (oblique popliteal ligament), cartilago thyreoidea (thyroid cartilage), bifurcatio tracheae (bifurcation of trachea), musculus anconeus (anconeus muscle), atrium meatus medii (atrium of middle meatus), Extractum Crataegi fluidum (liquid extract of hawthorn), paralysis congenita (congenital paralysis), syndromum immunodeficientiae acquisitae (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), tuberositas pterygoidea (pterygoid tuberosity), anaemia myelogenā (myelogenous anemia), arteria circumflexa humeri anterior (anterior circumflex humeral artery), organum vasculosum laminae terminalis (vascular organ of lamina terminalis), fissura longitudinalis cerebri (longitudinal cerebral fissure), fasciculus uncinatus cerebelli (uncinate fasciculus of cerebellum), kyphosis thoracica (thoracic kyphosis), linea glutea inferior (inferior gluteal line), syndesmoses cranii (cranial syndesmoses), articulatio sacrococcygea (sacrococcygeal joint), segmentum anterius mediale (anterior medial segment), infundibulum vesicae felleae (infundibulum of gallbladder), muscli palati mollis et faucium (muscles of soft palate and fauces), papilla duodeni major (major duodenal papilla), ostium atrioventriculare sinistrum (left atrioventricular orifice), membrana bronchopericardiaca (bronchopericardial membrane), arteria pharyngea ascendens (ascending pharyngeal artery), tuberositas deltoidea (deltoid tuberosity)

Part II ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 3 THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUN AND ITS GRAMMAR CATEGORIES

§ 18. THE LATIN TERMINOLOGY IN ANATOMY AND ITS STRUCTURE

Anatomical terminology naming all parts of the human body is the base of medical terminology. For more than a century the so-called Terminologia Anatomica — The International Anatomical Terminology in Latin which is accepted by anatomists of the world has existed. Latin is also the base for creating equivalent terms in other languages. The last edition of this International Anatomic Terminology appeared in 1998 and it contains 7428 terms.

The anatomical term is a word or several words used to denote a definite unit or structure of the human body. So Latin anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words — up to 8.

One-word terms consist of one noun in singular or plural:

cor (heart), fauces (fauces)

Two-word terms may consist of:

1. A noun with an adjective in singular or plural:

crista renālis (renal crest); nodi faciāles (facial nodes)

2. Two nouns in singular or plural:

corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra); terminatiōnes nervōrum (nerve terminals)

Three-word terms may consist of:

1. Three nouns:

ala cristae galli (wing of cock's crest); lamīna arcus vertēbrae (lamina of vertebral arch)

2. One noun plus two adjectives:

glandūlae salivariae minōres (minor salivary glands); plexus cervicālis posterior (posterior cervical plexus)

3. Two nouns plus one adjective:

arcus anterior atlantis (anterior arch of atlas); tuberositas ossis sacri (sacral tuberosity)

In multiword terms several nouns and adjectives can be presented:

fissūra horizontālis pulmōnis dextri (horizontal fissure of right lung);

processus uncinātus vertēbrae thoracīcae primae (uncinate process of the first thoracic vertebra)

§ 19. GRAMMAR CATEGORIES OF NOUN

The grammar categories of a Latin noun are the following: 1. Gender. 2. Number. 3. Case. 4. Declension.

There are three genders in Latin: masculine (masculīnum **m**); feminine (feminīnum **f**); neutral (neutrum **n**).

English nouns, in contrast to Latin ones, have only a natural gender: nouns denoting males are masculine (boy, man), nouns denoting females are feminine (girl, women) and nouns denoting inanimate objects are of neutral gender (bone, vessel).

Latin nouns always have only a grammar gender, which is determined by the ending, but what is more significant, by gender signs too (m, f, n). These gender signs are given in the dictionaries, where nouns are presented in the so-called word or dictionary form, which we shall discuss later.

As to the number, both English and Latin have two numbers — singular (singulāris) and plural (plurālis). Just like in English, the number of the noun in Latin shows whether we speak about one thing or more than one. Plural indications in English are very simple (endings -s or -es). In Latin, these indications are more numerous and are determined by the gender and declension. Plural endings will be discussed in detail in a special section.

Case as a grammar category is not presented in every language. It is absent, for example, in French, Italian and Spanish. As to English, we can speak about a “common case” and a “possessive case”. In contrast to English, in Latin there are six different forms of noun endings corresponding to each case. Only four case forms of Latin nouns are used in medical terms:

Nominatīvus, Nominative (answers the questions *who, what*)

Genetīvus, Genitive (answers the questions *whose, of what*)

Accusatīvus, Accusative (answers the questions *whom, what*)

Ablatīvus, Ablative (answers the questions *by whom, with what*).

The first two cases (Nominative and Genitive) are mainly used in the medical terminology, the other cases occur more rarely, they are used in anatomical and pharmaceutical terms in combination with prepositions.

§ 20. DICTIONARY FORM OF NOUNS

It is of vital importance to always remember that each Latin noun must be learnt in its “Dictionary form”. This form consists of three components:

1. The full form of the Nominative singular.
2. The Genitive singular ending, indicating the type of declension.
3. Definition of the grammar gender (with the letters m, f, n):

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
ala, ae f	ala, alae, feminīnum	wing
ligamentum, i n	ligamentum, ligamenti, neutrum	ligament
nervus, i m	nervus, nervi, masculīnum	nerve

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
cancer, cri m	cancer, cancri, masculinum	cancer
Eucalyptus, i f	Eucalyptus, Eucalypti, femininum	eucalypt
cornu, us n	cornu, cornus, neutrum	horn
corpus, ōris n	corpus, corpōris, neutrum	body

§ 21. THE STEM OF THE NOUN AND THE WAY TO DETERMINE IT

The stem of the noun is essential for declining and word building. It is determined by removing the Genitive ending which indicates the type of the declension:

Dictionary form	Full form of the Genitive	Stem of noun
crista, ae f ri	crist-ae	crist-
sulcus, i m — furrow, groove, sulcus	sulc-i	sulc-
cancer, cri m — cancer	cancr-i	cancr-
forāmen, ĩnis n — opening	foramĭn-is	foramĭn-
arcus, us m — arch	arc-us	arc-
facies, ēi f — face, surface	faci-ēi	faci-

§ 22. DESCRIPTION OF DECLENSIONS

Nouns with the ending **-ae** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 1st declension**; they are mainly feminine:

ala, ae f — wing

crista, ae f — crest

vertēbra, ae f — vertebra

Nouns having the ending **-i** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 2nd declension**.

Nouns of the **masculine gender** can have the ending **-us** in the Nominative (the greatest part) or **-er** (very limited in number):

angŭlus, i m — angle

muscŭlus, i m — muscle

nervus, i m — nerve

cancer, cri m — cancer (the full form of Genitive — **cancri**)

Nouns of the **neutral gender** have also two types: nouns with the ending form **-um** (the main part), and nouns with the ending form **-on** (they are of Greek origin), compare:

ligamentum, i n — ligament

dorsum, i n — back

encephālon, i n — brain

colon, i n — colon, large intestine

The 3rd declension is the most numerous one. Here are presented the nouns of all genders and with different endings in the Nominative having the ending, — **is** in the Genitive. They are commonly divided into two groups.

The first one includes nouns having equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (so-called *parisyllaba*):

basis, basis f (basis, is f) — base

canālis, canālis m (canalis, is m) — canal

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns has one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so-called *imparisyllaba*):

apex, apīcis m (the written dictionary form apex, īcis m) — apex, tip

tuberositas, tuberositātis f (tuberositas, ātis f) — tuberosity

forāmen, forāminis n (forāmen, īnis n) — foramen, opening

If such nouns have only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is:

dens, dentis m — tooth

os, ossis n — bone

pars, partis f — part

The 4th declension includes nouns of the masculine and neutral gender having the ending **-us** in the Genitive:

processus, processus m (processus, us m) — process

ductus, ductus m (ductus, us m) — duct

cornu, cornus n (cornu, us n) — horn

The 5th declension includes nouns having the ending **-ei** in the Genitive:

facies, faciēi f (facies, ēi f) — face, surface

Attention! Remember the following:

1. Feminine nouns may occur in the 2nd and 4th declensions, masculine ones in the 1st: oculista, ae m (ophthalmologist), Eucalyptus, i f (eucalypt), manus, us f (hand).

2. Two groups of nouns of the Greek origin retain their particular form:

2.1. Feminine nouns with the ending **-e** in the Nominative and **-es** in the Genitive: raphe, es f (a seam on the bony tissue).

2.2. Masculine nouns with the ending **-es** in the Nominative and **-ae** in the Genitive: diabētes, ae m (diabetes)

§ 23. EXERCISES

1. Give in written form the dictionary form of the following nouns:

apex, basis, canālis, cancer, cornu, corpus, cranium, dens, encephālon, facies, ganglion, lingua, mandibŭla, nasus, nervus, orgānon, os, radix, scapŭla, sternum, sulcus, tuber, tubercŭlum, tuberositas

2. Give in written form the dictionary form of the following nouns and define their stem and declension:

abdomen, angle, arch, base, bone, canal, crest, duct, head, horn, ligament, lower jaw, nose, opening, region, root (radix), skin, skull, surface, tongue, tooth, upper jaw

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns, translate the terms from Latin:

apex linguae; angŭlus faciēi nasi; basis cranii; canālis radīcis dentis; corpus vertēbrae; facies tubercŭli costae; incisŭra mandibŭlae; nervus encephāli; pars faciēi sterni; septum nasi; sulcus sinus; tuber maxillae

4. Give the dictionary form of each noun, translate the terms into Latin:

abdomen cavity; arch of aorta; base of mandible; body of upper jaw; canal of dental radix (radix of tooth); cancer of the skin; cavity of the nose; cervical part (part of cervix); crest of the rib head; face bone; head of rib; nerve of the brain; nervous node of the neck; part of the process; region of skull; skin nerve; sternal angle (angle of sternum); surface of knee; top of the horn; vertebral arch (arch of vertebra)

§ 24. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 3

Latin-English vocabulary

1st declension

costa, ae f — rib

incisŭra, ae f — incisure, slit or notch

lingua, ae f — tongue

mandibŭla, ae f — lower jaw, mandible

maxilla, ae f — upper jaw, maxilla

2nd declension

angŭlus, i m — angle

cancer, cri m — cancer

cranium, i n — skull

encephālon i n — brain

ganglion, i n — nervous node

nasus, i m — nose

nervus, i m — nerve

orgānon, i n — organ

septum, i n — septum, dividing wall

sternum, i n — sternum, breast- bone

sulcus, i m — sulcus, furrow or groove

tubercŭlum, i n — tubercle, small rounded swelling

3rd declension

apex, ĩcis m — apex, top

basis, is f — base

caput, ĩtis n — head

canālis, is m — canal

corpus, ōris n — body

dens, dentis m — tooth

os, ossis n — bone

radix, īcis f — radix, root
regio, ōnis f — region
tuber, ěris n — tuber, large rounded swelling
tuberositas, ātis f — tuberosity

4th declension

cornu, us n — horn, hornshaped process
processus, us m — process
sinus, us m — sinus, hollow curvature or cavity

5th declension

facies, ēi f — face, surface

English-Latin vocabulary

abdomen — abdōmen, ĩnis n
aorta — aorta, ae f
angle — angŭlus, i m
apex, top — apex, ĩcis m
arch — arcus, us m
base — basis, is f
body — corpus, ōris n
bone — os, ossis n
canal — canālis, is m
cavity — cavitas, ātis f
cervical: see neck
costal: see rib
cranial: see skull
crest — crista, ae f
dental: see tooth
duct — ductus, us m
ganglion, nervous node — ganglion, i n
face — facies, ēi f
head — caput, ĩtis n
horn — cornu, us n
knee — genu, us n
ligament — ligamentum, i n
lower jaw, mandible — mandibŭla, ae f
neck — cervix, īcis f
nerve — nervus, i m
nose — nasus, i m
opening — forāmen, ĩnis n
part — pars, partis f
region — regio, ōnis f
rib — costa, ae f

root, radix — radix, īcis f
 skin — cutis, is f
 skull — cranium, i n
 surface — facies, ēi f
 tongue — lingua, ae f
 tooth — dens, dentis m
 upper jaw, maxilla — maxilla, ae f
 vertebra — vertēbra, ae f
 vertebral: see vertebra

Lesson 4

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

§ 25. INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION ABOUT ADJECTIVES IN LATIN

Both in English and Latin the adjective is a word expressing the quality of a thing: long, short, nasal, simple and so on.

But in contrast to English, Latin adjectives have always grammar agreement with their nouns, that is a noun and an adjective must have the same gender, case and number. The adjective follows the noun.

According to their endings all Latin adjectives are divided into two groups.

§ 26. 1ST GROUP OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives which have three gender endings make up the 1st group: Masculine forms have the ending **-us** or **-er**, Feminine — **-a**, Neutral — **-um**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neutral
longus (long)	longa	longum
liber (free)	libēra	libĕrum
dexter (right)	dextra	dextrum

The dictionary form of adjectives includes the full masculine form, endings of the feminine and the neutral ones (when answering, every gender form is pronounced!). All these forms are in the Nominative:

longus, a, um — long	oral form: longus, longa, longum
liber, ěra, ěrum — free	oral form: liber, libĕra, libĕrum
dexter, tra, trum — right	oral form: dexter, dextra, dextrum

In the last two adjectives the endings of the feminine and the neutral forms are enlarged. It is common for the adjectives with the ending **-er** in the masculine form because it helps us determine, whether the vowel **-e** in the feminine and the neutral forms is lost or not.

The gender forms of the adjectives of this group have the declension pattern in the nouns of the 1st and 2nd declensions: feminine forms are declined

like the nouns of the first declension, masculine and neutral forms — like the nouns of the second declension. The stem of these adjectives is determined like that of the nouns:

Gender form	Nominative	Genitive	Declension	Stem
masculine	longus	longi	second	long-
feminine	longa	longae	first	long-
neutral	longum	longi	second	long-
masculine	liber	libēri	second	liber-
feminine	libēra	libērae	first	liber-
neutral	libērum	libēri	second	liber-
masculine	dexter	dextri	second	dextr-
feminine	dextra	dextrae	first	dextr-
neutral	dextrum	dextri	second	dextr-

As to the adjectives with the masculine form -er, it is more convenient to determine their stem from the feminine Genitive form.

§ 27. 2ND GROUP OF ADJECTIVES

This group includes adjectives following the rules of the third declension of nouns. According to their gender endings they are divided into three subgroups. The stem of this group of adjectives is determined like in the preceding group.

The first subgroup is made up of adjectives having three gender endings: **-er** for masculine, **-is** for feminine, **-e** for neutral:

Masculine form	Feminine form	Neutral form	Genitive form	Stem
acer (sharp, acute)	acris	acre	acris	acr-
celer (quick, fast)	celēris	celēre	celēris	celer-

The written dictionary form, as in the previous group, includes the full masculine form and the endings of the feminine and the neutral:

acer, crīis, cre

celer, ēris, ēre

When answering orally, every gender form is pronounced in full.

The second subgroup includes adjectives with two gender endings. Masculine and feminine forms have the common ending **-is**, neutral — the ending **-e**:

Masculine and Feminine form	Neutral form	Genitive form	Stem
brevīs (brief, short)	brevē	brevīs	brev-
frontālis (frontal)	frontāle	frontālis	frontal-
sacrālis (sacral)	sacrāle	sacrālis	sacral-

Adjectives of this subgroup are the most numerous in every branch of medical terminology.

The dictionary form of these adjectives consists of the full masculine/feminine form and the ending of neutral:

brevis, e; frontalis, e; sacralis, e

The third subgroup is made up of adjectives with one ending, common for the three genders. There are four kinds of such common endings:

- 1) **-ns**: sapiens (masculine, feminine, neutral) intelligent
- 2) **-s**: teres (masculine, feminine, neutral) round
- 3) **-r**: par (masculine, feminine, neutral) equal, pair
- 4) **-x**: simplex (masculine, feminine, neutral) simple

Let us look at these adjectives from the point of view of their Genitive form and their stem:

Gender form	Nominative form	Genitive form	Stem
masculine feminine neutral	sapiens sapiens sapiens	sapientis	sapient-
masculine feminine neutral	teres teres teres	terētis	teret-
masculine feminine neutral	par par par	paris	par-
masculine feminine neutral	simplex simplex simplex	simplīcis	simplic-

The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative form and the Genitive ending:

sapiens, entis (oral form sapiens, sapientis)

teres, ētis (oral form teres, terētis)

par, is (oral form par, paris)

simplex, ĩcis (oral form simplex, simplicis)

§ 28. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

To agree an adjective and a noun in Latin means to say or to write these parts of speech in the same gender, number and case. To do it you should:

- 1) imagine or write dictionary forms of the noun and adjective;
- 2) correctly determine the gender, number and case of the noun;
- 3) place the noun in the first place of the term
- 4) choose the correct grammar form of the adjective for this noun and put it in the second place (after the noun).

Let us take, e. g., the following word combinations: 1) sacral vertebra; 2) carotid tubercle 3) palatine groove

First of all, let us write down the dictionary form of every word:

sacral — *sacrālis*, e; carotid — *carotīcus*, a, um; tubercle — *tubercŭlum*, i n; palatine — *palatīnus*, a, um; groove — *sulcus*, i m; vertebra — *vertēbra*, ae f

Now, let us make up the procedure of agreement:

1) *vertēbra*: gender — feminine, number — singular, case — Nominative.

So in the dictionary form of the adjective we choose the form *sacralis* and agree it in this way with the noun *vertebra*: *vertebra sacralis*

2) *tubercŭlum*: gender — neutral, singular, Nominative.

That's why we choose the adjective form *caroticum* and make up the term *tuberculum caroticum*.

3) *sulcus*: Masculine, Singular, Nominative.

So for this noun we need the adjective form *palatīnus*. Writing down it after the noun *sulcus* we get as a result the term *sulcus palatīnus*.

If we have to agree two adjectives with one noun, the order of agreement is the following. The adjective indicating the main space location of the object (*cardiācus*, a, um cardiac; *cervicālis*, e cervical, *gastrīcus*, a, um gastric and so on) is placed after the noun: right gastric artery — *arteria gastrica dextra*, deep lymph vessel — *vas lymphaticum profundum*.

One should be able not only to agree adjectives and nouns in the Nominative, but also make up the Genitive form from this Nominative construction. So, let us make the Genitive forms of the above mentioned Nominative forms:

1) *vertēbra sacralis*: from the dictionary form we already know the Genitive form and write it down: *vertebrae*. Now, we have to determine the Genitive form of *sacralis*. As we have seen above, this adjective belongs to the third declension, that's why the Genitive form should have the ending -is, that is *sacralis*, which finally makes in the Genitive the word combination *vertebrae sacralis*.

2) *tubercŭlum carotīcum*: both the noun and the adjective belong to the second declension, that's why they have to receive the ending -i in the Genitive form — *tuberculi carotici*.

3) *sulcus palatīnus*: *sulcus*, as it is evident from the dictionary form, belongs to the second declension, the ending -us in the adjective *palatinus* tells us that this form belongs to the second declension and so we can determine the Genitive form as *palatīni*. The whole term in Genitive form is *sulci palatini*.

§ 29. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of the following adjectives:

articulāris, *celēris*, *compositum*, *dextrum*, *frontālis*, *impar*, *interna*, *liberum*, *nasāle*, *palatīna*, *sapiens*, *simplex*, *teres*, *thoracicum*

2. Make up the dictionary form of every word, translate the word combinations and add forms of the Genitive singular for every word combination:

articulatio simplex; canālis longus; cornu coccygēum; ductus sublinguālis; facies articulāris; ganglion impar; ligamentum teres; margo sinister; os hyoideum; pars dextra; pulsus cardiācus celer; sulcus brevis; vas lymphaticum profundum; vena occipitālis

3. *Agree the following adjectives with the nouns:*

angūlus, i m (frontālis, e; mastoideus, a, um);

articulatio, ōnis f (compositus, a, um; sinister, tra, trum; simplex, ĩcis);

facies, ēi f (costālis, e; internus, a, um; dexter, tra, trum)

ganglion, i n (impar, āris; sublinguālis, e);

ligamentum, i n (teres, ětis; brevis, e);

margo, ĩnis m (dexter, tra, trum; liber, ěra, ěrum; nasālis, e);

musculus, i m (teres, ětis; magnus, a, um);

nervus, i m (hypoglossus, a, um; occipitālis, e);

pars, partis f (petrōsus, a, um; frontālis, e);

processus, us m (articularis, e; palatīnus, a, um; brevis, e)

ramus, i m (communĳcans, ntis; costālis, e; externus, a, um);

4. *Make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the nouns in Latin :*

arch (dental, venous, left); artery (deep, lingual, right); bone (short, palatine, hyoid); canal (long, short, sacral); crest (lacrimal, external); duct (hepatic, sublingual); joint (complex, simple); process (palatine, costal); region (cervical, mastoid); tubercle (carotid, lateral); vein (deep, sacral); vertebra (prominent, thoracic); vessel (left, lymphatic)

5. *Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the following terms into Latin:*

articular surface; costal arch; deep lymphatic vessel; frontal crest; lateral thoracic vein; lateral pterygoid muscle; left hepatic duct; long ligament; medial root; occipital artery; occipital angle; oval opening; palatine process; superficial vein; vertebral column

§ 30. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 4

Latin-English vocabulary

1st declension

arteria, ae f — artery

vena, ae f — vein

vertēbra, ae f — vertebra

2nd declension

ligamentum, i n — ligament

musculus, i m — muscle

3rd declension

articulatio, ōnis f — joint

margo, ĩnis m — margin, border

pars, partis f — part
vas, vasis n — vessel

4th declension

ductus, us m — duct
pulsus, us m — pulse

1st group of adjectives

cardiācus, a, um — cardiac
coccygēus, a, um — coccygeal
compositus, a, um — complex
dexter, tra, trum — right
externus, a, um — external
iliācus, a, um — iliac
internus, a, um — internal
hyoideus, a, um — hyoid, sublingual (bone)
hypoglossus, a, um — hypoglossal, sublingual (nerve)
liber, ěra, ěrum — free
longus, a, um — long
lymphaticus, a, um — lymphatic
magnus, a, um — large (vein), magnus (adductor), great (nerve)
mastoideus, a, um — mastoid
palatīnus, a, um — palatine
petrōsus, a, um — stony
profundus, a, um — deep
sacer, cra, crum — sacral (bone)
sinister, tra, trum — left
thoracīcus, a, um — thoracic

2nd group of adjectives

articulāris, e — articular
brevis, e — short
celer, ěris, ěre — celer (pulse), swift
communīcans, ntis — communicative
costālis, e — costal
frontālis, e — frontal
impar, āris — impar, unpaired
nasālis, e — nasal
occipitālis, e — occipital
sacrālis, e — sacral
sapiens, entis — intelligent, clever
simplex, ĩcis — simple
sublinguālis, e — sublingual (excepting nerve and bone)
superficiālis, e — superficial
teres, ětis — round (excepting foramen)

English-Latin glossary

artery — arteria, ae f
carotid — carotīcus, a, um
cervical — cervicālis, e
column — columna, ae f
complex — composītus, a, um
costal — costālis, e
deep — profundus, a, um
dental — dentālis, e
duct — ductus, us m
external — externus, a, um
hepatic — hepatīcus, a, um
hyoid — hyoideus, a, um (os)
joint — articulatio, ōnis f
lacrimal — lacrimālis, e
lateral — laterālis, e
ligament — ligamentum, i n
lingual — linguālis, e
left — sinister, tra, trum
long — longus, a, um
lymphatic — lymphatīcus, a, um
mastoid — mastoideus, a, um
medial — mediālis, e
occipital — occipitālis, e
oval — ovālis, e
palatine — palatīnus, a, um
prominent — prominens, entis
pterygoid — pterygoideus, a, um
right — dexter, tra, trum
sacral — sacrālis, e (except for os)
short — brevis, e
superficial — superficiālis, e
sublingual — sublingualis, e (except for os and nervus)
vein — vena, ae f
venous — venōsus, a, um
vertebral — vertebrālis, e
vessel — vas, vasis n

Lesson 5
DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.
PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF COMPARATIVE
AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES IN ANATOMICAL TERMS

§ 31. INTRODUCTORY REMARKS TO THE TOPIC

Comparative and superlative as degrees of comparison exist both in English and Latin, that's why there is no need to explain the essence of these grammar phenomenon. It is more essential to note that in the international medical nomenclatures, the forms of comparative and superlative have a relatively narrow sphere of use. Most frequently they are used in the anatomical terminology. As to the grammar formation, both comparative and superlative are built from the stem of the positive degree, that is from the dictionary form of the adjective.

§ 32. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE

To form the comparative degree, it is necessary 1) to find the stem of the positive degree; 2) to add the suffix **-ior** for the masculine and feminine forms and **-ius** for the neutral form:

Positive degree	Stem	Comparative masculine and feminine form	Comparative neutral form	Translation
longus, a, um (long) ruber, bra, brum (red) simplex, ĩcis (simple)	long- rubr- simplic-	longior rubrior simplicior	longius rubrius simplicius	longer redder more simple

The full dictionary form of the masculine and the feminine has the ending **-ior** while the neutral form has **-ius**:

longior, ius (written dictionary form) longior, longius (oral form)
 rubrior, ius (written dictionary form) rubrior, rubrius (oral form)
 simplicior, ius (written dictionary form) simplicior, simplicius (oral form)

Adjectives in the comparative degree have the same pattern of declension as nouns of the third declension. Their distinctive feature is the ending **-ōris** in the Genitive:

Nominative form of comparative	Genitive form of comparative	Stem
longior (m, f) longius (n)	longiōris	longior-
rubrior (m, f) rubrius (n)	rubriōris	rubrior-
simplicior simplicius	simpliciōris	simplicior-

The grammar agreement of the comparative form with nouns follows the common rules:

Positive degree		Comparative degree	
m processus	m longus	m processus	m longior
n ligamentum	n longum	n ligamentum	n longius
f costa	f longa	f costa	f longior
n systēma	n simplex	n systēma	n simplicius

§ 33. COMPARATIVE FORMS IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

In anatomical (and histological) terminology only limited forms of adjectives in the comparative degree are used. First of all, comparative forms of the adjectives great (large) and little (small) are used:

Positive degree of Latin adjective	English equivalents	Comparative form of Latin adjectives	English anatomical equivalents
magnus, a, um	great, large	maior (major) maius (majus)	greater, larger, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus	lesser, smaller, minor

In the forms minor, minus we don't see the full endings -ior, -ius, but that is a distinctive feature of these forms to remember.

In anatomical terminology four adjectives in the comparative form are also used, although from the point of view of English, not every of such forms expresses comparison:

Latin masculine and feminine form	Latin neural form	Latin dictionary form	English anatomical equivalent
anterior	anterius	anterior, ius	anterior
posterior	posterius	posterior, ius	posterior
superior	superius	superior, ius	upper, superior
inferior	inferius	inferior, ius	lower, inferior

Thus, only 6 adjectives in the comparative degree are used in Latin anatomical terminology:

Latin dictionary form	Genitive form	Stem
anterior, ius	anteriōris	anterior-
posterior, ius	posteriōris	posterior-
superior, ius	superiōris	superior-
inferior, ius	inferiōris	inferior-
major, ius	majōris	major-
minor, us	minōris	minor-

We should note that the stem of the adjectives in the comparative degree coincides with the Nominative masculine and feminine forms ending with -ior.

The Genitive singular form in the comparative degree is formed by adding the ending **-is** to the stem.

It is necessary to remember that Latin adjectives in the comparative degree are always placed last in the multiword term:

facies articularis superior — superior articular surface

musculus obliquus capitis inferior — inferior oblique muscle of head

§ 34. THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

Commonly, the superlative degree is formed by adding the suffix -issim- and gender endings -us, -a, -um to the stem of the positive degree:

Positive degree	Stem	Superlative degree	English equivalent
latus, a, um (broad, vast, wide)	lat-	latissimus, a, um	the broadest (vastest, widest), latissimus (in Anatomy)
longus, a, um (long)	long-	longissimus, a, um	the longest
subtilis, e (fine)	subtil-	subtilissimus, a, um	the finest

Some forms of superlative degree are formed in a special way:

Initial form	Superlative degree	English anatomical equivalent
magnus, a, um (great)	maximus, a, um	the greatest, maximus
parvus, a, um (little, small)	minimus, a, um	the least, minimus
inferior, ius (inferior, lower)	imus, a, um	lower, imus
superior, ius (superior, upper)	supremus, a, um	supreme, the highest

The dictionary form of adjectives in the superlative degree is similar to adjectives of the first group with the endings -us, -a, um. They are declined also like the adjectives of the first group and their stem is determined similarly.

§ 35. PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF THE COMPARISON DEGREES OF THE ADJECTIVES MAGNUS, A, UM AND PARVUS, A, UM IN LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

The quality of great (large) or little (small) can be expressed in Latin anatomical terminology by different forms of comparison degrees but the use of these forms, as a rule, is strictly regulated. As to English equivalent forms, unfortunately, we don't observe here such a strict regulation. Moreover, different variants of above mentioned adjectives in different editions of "The International Anatomical Terminology" are used. In this textbook we have decided to use only the terms presented in the last official edition, that is "International Anatomical Terminology. FCAT. Federative Committee on Anatomical Terminology". Stuttgart, New York: Thieme, 1998. It is necessary to stress that in this edition, the above mentioned Latin adjectives in

comparative and superlative forms are namely used as English anatomical equivalents.

Let us systematize the forms of comparison degrees of the above mentioned adjectives:

Latin positive degree	English equivalent	Latin comparative degree	English anatomical equivalent	Latin superlative degree	English anatomical equivalent
magnus, a, um	great, large, magnus	major, majus	greater, larger, major	maximus, a, um	maximus, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus, smaller	lesser, smaller, minor	minimus, a, um	minimus, little

Now some notes about the use of Latin degree comparison forms that you should remember.

1. Forms **magnus** / **parvus** are used, if a solitary anatomical structure is indicated:

forāmen (occipitāle) magnum — foramen (occipital) magnum
arteria pancreatīca magna — greater pancreatic artery
vena magna cerēbri — great cerebral vein
nervus auriculāris magnus — great auricular nerve
muscūlus adductor magnus — adductor magnus muscle
nucleus magnus — large nucleus

2. Forms **major** / **minor** are used if dimensions of two similar and placed next to each other anatomical structures are compared:

ala major / ala minor — greater wing / lesser wing
pelvis major / pelvis minor — greater pelvis / lesser pelvis

nervus petrōsus major / nervus petrosus minor — greater petrosal nerve / lesser petrosal nerve

muscūlus pectorālis major / muscūlus pectorālis minor — pectoral major muscle / pectoral minor muscle

musculus teres major / musculus teres minor — teres major muscle / teres minor muscle

There are some exceptions from this rule:

muscūlus adductor magnus / muscūlus adductor minimus — adductor magnus / adductor minimus

vena cardiāca magna / vena cardiāca parva — great cardiac vein / small cardiac vein

vena saphēna magna / vena saphēna parva — great saphenous vein / small saphenous vein

The forms major / minor are most common in Latin anatomical terminology. As for English equivalents of such terms there is no, unfortunately, universal pattern of systematization of their use, and some irregular translation variants sometimes should be used, compare:

anūlus irīdis major — outer border of iris

anūlus irīdis minor — inner border of iris

One more example. It isn't clear why the equivalent to *arteria pancreatica magna* in English is *greater pancreatic artery*, though there isn't any artery with the opposite sense (lesser, smaller, minor) near this artery. Such examples can be numerous.

3. Forms *maximus* / *minimus* are used in two meanings:

a) in the meaning of the positive degree *parvus* (little):

digītus minimus — little finger (in the list of the terms of general anatomy).

But in terms with the noun *muscle* are so-called Latin Technical Termini (naturally, in English pronunciation as in other similar cases) used:

musculus extensor digīti minimi — extensor digiti minimi

musculus adductor digīti minimi brevis — adductor digiti minimi brevis

musculus oppōnens digīti minimi — opponens digiti minimi

In these cases the English equivalent *minimus* is to be understood as “the least”.

b) forms **maximus** / **minimus** only in the meaning the greatest / the least are used in the following terms:

musculus glutēus maximus — gluteus maximus muscle

musculus gluteus minimus — gluteus minimus muscle

musculus scalēnus minimus — scalenus minimus muscle

And only in one case the English form of the superlative degree is used:

foramīna venārum minimārum — openings of the smallest (cardiac) veins

§ 36. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate it into English and make up the Genitive form of each word combination:

ala major; *cartilāgo alaris major*; *cornu majus*; *facies anterior*; *ganglion cervicāle superius*; *incisūra vertebrālis inferior*; *ligamentum longitudināle anterius*; *nervus alveolāris inferior*; *pervis major*; *spina tympanīca major*; *sulcus minor*; *tubercūlum majus*

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

arcus anterior atlantis; *arteria thyroidea ima*; *concha nasālis suprēma*; *crista tubercūli majōris*; *facies anterior partis petrōsae*; *fossa cranii anterior*; *labium faciēi inferius*; *musculus longissimus capītis (thorācis)*; *musculus palpēbrae superiōris*; *nervus splanchnicus imus*, *paries anterior gastris*; *pars libēra membri superiōris*; *plica duodēni major*; *spina iliāca posterior inferior*; *sulcus sinus petrōsi inferiōris*; *vena saphēna parva*

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate from English into Latin:

adductor magnus muscle; anterior ethmoidal opening; bursa of the broadest muscle of back; crest of greater tubercle; gluteus minimus muscle; great

auricular nerve; lesser horn; greater palatine groove; greater petrosal nerve; groove for inferior petrosal sinus; groove for lesser petrosal nerve; highest nuchal line; inferior surface of the tongue; large nucleus; latissimus dorsi (muscle); lesser pelvis; lesser splanchnic nerve; lesser wing of sphenoidal bone; lower articular process; lower lip; major sublingual duct; posterior longitudinal ligament; small saphenous vein; smaller rhomboid muscle; superior nerve node; teres minor muscle; upper (lower) head

Attention! Constructions with the preposition **for + adjective + noun** are to be translated into Latin as the **Genitive form without a preposition**: canal for vertebral artery — canālis arteriae vertebrālis.

§ 37. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 5

Latin-English vocabulary Nouns of the 1st declension

ala, ae f — wing
concha, ae f — concha (shell-shaped hole)
crista, ae f — crest
fossa, ae f — fossa (little hole)
palpēbra, ae f — eyelid
plica, ae f — fold
spina, ae f — spine

Nouns of the 2nd declension

duodēnum, i n — duodenum
labium, i n — lip
membrum, i n — limb

Nouns of the 3rd declension

atlas, ntis m — atlas (the first cervical vertebra)
cartilāgo, ĩnis f — cartilage
gaster, tris f — stomach
paries, ětis m — wall
pelvis, is f — pelvis
thorax, ācis m — thorax, chest

Adjectives of the 1st group

imus, a, um — imus (ima), lower
longissĭmus, a, um — the longest
parvus, a, um — little, small
saphēnus, a, um — saphenous
suprēmus, a, um — supreme, the highest
thyr(e)oideus, a, um — thyroid

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolāris, e — alveolar
cervicālis, e — cervical

longitudinālis, e — longitudinal

vertebrālis, e — vertebral

Adjectives in the form of comparative degree

anterior, ius — anterior

posterior, ius — posterior

superior, ius — superior

inferior, ius — inferior

major, ius — major, greater

minor, ius — minor, lesser, smaller

English-Latin glossary

anterior — anterior, ius

auricular — auriculāris, e

adductor — (muscūlus) adductor, ōris m

back — dorsum, i n

broadest — latissīmus, a, um

bursa (pouch, sac) — bursa, ae f

ethmoidal — ethmoidālis, e

gluteal — glutēus, a, um

greater — major, jus

head — caput, ūtis n

highest — suprēmus, a, um

imus, ima — imus, a, um

inferior — inferior, ius

large — magnus, a, um

latissimus — latissīmus, a, um

lesser — minor, us

lip — labium, i n

longitudinal — longitudinālis, e

lower — inferior, ius

magnus, magnum — magnus, a, um

major — major, jus

minimus — minīmus, a, um

minor — minor, us

nerve node — ganglion, i n

nucleus — nucleus, i m

nuchal — nuchālis, e

pectoral — pectorālis, e

petrosal — petrōsus, a, um

rhomboid — rhomboideus, a, um

saphenous — saphēnus, a, um

smaller — minor, us

sphenoidal — sphenoidālis, e
 splanchnic — splanchnīcus, a, um
 superior, upper — superior, ius
 thyroid — thyr(e)oideus, a, um

Lesson 6
THE MASCULINE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION
OF NOUNS. NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING
DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS

§ 38. MASCULINE NAMES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION
FROM THE POINT OF VIEW OF THEIR ENDINGS
IN THE NOMINATIVE AND THE GENITIVE

All masculine names in the third declension may be grouped according to the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Example	Exceptions
-er	-ēris -ĕris -tris	trochanter, ēris m <i>trochanter</i> vomer, ĕris m <i>vomer</i> venter, ntris m <i>belly of the muscle</i>	cadāver, ĕris n <i>cadaver, dead body</i> tuber, ĕris n <i>tuber, tuberosity</i> gaster, tris f <i>stomach</i> mater, tris f <i>mater, cerebral coat</i>
-es	-ĕdis -ĕtis	pes, pedis m <i>foot</i> paries, ĕtis m <i>wall</i>	
-ex	-īcis	cortex, ĭcis m <i>cortex, crust</i>	
-o	-īnis -ōnis	homo, īnis m <i>man</i> pulmo, ōnis m <i>lung</i>	
-or	-ōris	tumor, ōris m <i>tumor</i>	arbor, ōris f <i>tree</i> cor, cordis n <i>heart</i>
-os	-oris	flos, floris m <i>flower</i>	os, oris n <i>mouth</i> os, ossis n <i>bone</i>

Learning by heart this table helps constitute agreement of adjectives and nouns.

§ 39. SOME EXPLANATIONS TO THE EXCEPTIONS
PRESENTED IN THE TABLE

1. The noun arbor is used to denote two anatomical structures having a shape similar to a tree:

- a) arbor bronchiālis (bronchial tree)
- b) arbor vitae cerebelli (arbor vitae of cerebellum, medullar body of cerebellum having a form of a tree in its sections).

2. The noun *mater* in the combination with adjectives takes the second place:

a) *dura mater encephali* (*cranialis*) — *dura mater* of brain (*cranial dura mater*)

b) *pia mater medullae spinalis* — *spinal pia mater*

c) *arachnoidea mater* — *arachnoid mater*

§ 40. LATIN NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS

Latin names of muscles performing different functions (rotation, raising, pressing, bending and so on) consist of two words. The noun *musculus* (*m.*) is put in the first place with the name of the muscle following it:

m. (musculus) levator — *Levator*

m. (musculus) masseter — *Masseter*

m. (musculus) tensor — *Tensor*

As we see, English equivalents contain merely the name of a muscle. This rule relates to all muscle names of English anatomical terms.

It is important to remember that in Latin terms the following strict word order of muscle names is observed.

1. The noun muscle takes the 1st place.

2. The name of muscle takes the 2nd place.

3. The name of the structure, where the muscle is functioning, takes the third place and this name consisting of one or two words is always presented in the Genitive.

4. If the muscle has an adjective (*long, short, vast* and so on), this adjective is the last in the combination:

Extensor digiti minimi — *musculus extensor digiti minimi*

Flexor pollicis brevis — *musculus flexor pollicis brevis*

Pronator quadratus — *musculus pronator quadratus*

Tensor veli palatini — *musculus tensor veli palatini*

Levator anguli oris — *musculus levator anguli oris*

As we can see, Latin technical terms predominate in English equivalents. Genuine English names are absent and Latin words are transliterated.

As to the Latin names of muscles which denote different functions, they are, as a rule, nouns of the third declension with the ending *-or*, more seldom *-er*. To be more precise, 18 muscles have the ending **-or** and only 3 — the ending **-er**.

In two cases, there are several muscle names to denote the same function. So muscles named *arrector*, *cremaster*, *levator* may fulfill elevation. The muscles *compressor*, *constrictor*, *sphincter* fulfill compression. In these cases every muscle has its certain sphere of application which is to be memorized.

§ 41. EXERCISES

1. *Give the dictionary form of every word and translate from Latin:*

ala vomēris; arachnoidea mater; arbor vitae cerebelli; cadāver homīnis; cortex renis; dura mater craniālis seu dura mater encephāli; paries externus ductus cochleāris; paries gastris posterior, pars superior pedis dextri; pia mater spinālis; tumor pariētis gastris; venter anterior muscūli digastrīci; vestibūlum oris

2. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:*

angle of mouth; bronchial tree; cardiac notch of left lung; dorsal artery of foot; frontal tuber of cranium; greater trochanter and lesser trochanter; intelligent man (as a biological species); parietal tuber; pelvic part of ureter; posterior wall of stomach; right border of heart; sole of the foot; vomerine groove (=groove of vomer)

3. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:*

muscūlus adductor digīti minīmi; muscūlus levātor labii superiōris; muscūlus levātor scapūlae; muscūlus pronātor quadrātus; muscūlus sphincter pupillae; muscūlus tensor fasciae latae; pars profunda muscūli massetēris

4. *Write down the dictionary form and translate from English into Latin:*

Adductor minimus; Depressor of lower lip; Extensor indicis; Flexor digiti minimi brevis; Flexor pollicis longus; Rotator of neck; inferior Constrictor of pharynx; Tensor veli palatini

§ 42. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 6

Latin-English dictionary Nouns of the 1st declension

fascia, ae f — fascia
planta, ae f — sole
pupilla, ae f — pupil
scapūla, ae f — scapula, shoulder blade
vita, ae f — life

Nouns of the 2nd declension

cerebellum, i n — cerebellum
digītus, i m — finger
vestibūlum, i n — vestibule

Nouns of the 3rd declension

m. adductor, ōris m — adductor (bringing muscle)
arbor, ōris f — tree
arbor vitae — arbor vitae
cadāver, ěris n — cadaver (dead body)
cortex, ĩcis m — cortex (crust)
homo, ĩnis m — man
m. levator, ōris m — levator (elevating muscle)

mater, tris f — mater (cerebral coat)
m. massēter, ēris m — masseter (chewing muscle)
os, oris n — mouth
pes, pedis m — foot
m. pronātor, ōris m — pronator (muscle turning the forearm)
ren, renis m — kidney
seu — or
m. sphincter, ēris m — sphincter (compressing muscle)
m. tensor, ōris m — tensor (straining muscle)
tumor, ōris m — tumor (swelling, growth)
vomer, ēris m — vomer
venter, tris m — belly (of the muscle)

Adjectives of the 1st group

arachnoideus, a um — arachnoid
digastrīcus, a um — digastric
durus, a, um — solid
dura mater — dura mater
latus, a, um — broad
fascia lata — fascia lata
quadrātus, a, um — square, quadrate (muscle), quadratus (pronator)

Adjectives of the 3rd group

cochleāris, e — cochlear
craniālis, e — cranial
spinālis, e — spinal

English-Latin glossary

Adductor (bringing muscle) — m. adductor, ōris m
border — margo, ĩnis m
bronchial — bronchiālis, e
Constrictor (compressing muscle) — m. constrictor, ōris m
Depressor (lowing muscle) — m. depressor, ōris m
digitus, digiti — digĭtus, i m
dorsal — dorsālis, e
Extensor (unbending muscle) — m. extensor, ōris m
Flexor (bending muscle) — m. flexor, ōris m
foot — pes, pedis m
frontal — frontālis, e
heart — cor, cordis n
index, indicis (index finger) — index, ĩcis m
lung — pulmo, ōnis m
man — homo, ĩnis m
mouth — os, oris n

palatinum, palatine — palatīnus, a, um
 parietal — parieālis, e
 pelvic — pelvīcus, a, um
 pharynx — pharynx, yngis m
 pollex, pollicis (thumb) — pollex, ĭcis m
 Rotator (rotating muscle) — m. rotātor, ōris m
 stomach — gaster, tris f
 Tensor (straining muscle) — m. tensor, ōris m
 tree — arbor, ōris f
 trochanter — trochanter, ēris m
 ureter — urēter, ēris m
 velum (curtain) — velum, i n
 vomer — vomer, ěris m
 wall — paries, ětis m

Lesson 7

FEMININE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

§ 43. SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE FEMININE NAMES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

All feminine names in the third declension may be systematized in the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Examples	Exceptions
-do	-ĭnis	longitūdo, ĭnis f <i>length</i>	tendo, ĭnis m <i>tendon, sinew</i>
-go	-ĭnis	cartilāgo, ĭnis f <i>cartilage</i>	margo, ĭnis m <i>border, edge</i>
-io	-ōnis	articulatio, ōnis f <i>joint</i>	
-as	-ātis	cavitas, ātis f <i>cavity</i>	atlas, ntis m <i>atlas</i> ; pancreas, ātis n <i>pancreas</i> ; vas, vasis n <i>vessel</i>
-is	-is (parisyllaba)	cutis, is f <i>skin</i>	axis, is m <i>axis</i> canālis, is m <i>canal</i> unguis, is m <i>nail</i>
-is	-ĭdis (imparisyllāba)	pyrāmis, ĭdis f <i>pyramid</i>	pulvis, ěris m <i>powder</i> sanguis, ĭnis m <i>blood</i>
-us	-ūdis	incus, ūdis f <i>incus, little bone of the ear</i>	
consonant + s	consonant +tis	pars, partis f <i>part</i>	dens, dentis m <i>tooth</i>
vowel + x (except -ex)	vowel + -cis vowel + -gis	radix, ĭcis f <i>root</i>	fornix, ĭcis m <i>fornix, arch</i> ; hallux, ūcis m <i>hallux, toe</i> ; coccyx, ygis m <i>coccyx, tailbone</i> thorax, ācis m <i>thorax, chest</i>
consonant + x	consonant + -cis consonant + -gis	falx, falcis f <i>falx, sickle</i> phalanx, ngis f <i>phalanx</i>	larynx, ngis m <i>larynx</i> pharynx, ngis m <i>pharynx</i>

§ 44. EXERCISES

1. *Write down the dictionary form, translate from Latin into English:*

articulatio capitis costae; axis bulbi externus; basis pyramidis renalis; cartilago alaris major; cavitas oris propria; cervix dentis canini; diameter pelvis transversa; margo ciliaris iridis; margo liber unguis; margo uteri dexter; meatus acusticus auris dextrae; os coccygis; ostium appendicis vermiformis; pars libera gingivae; plexus venosus canalis nervi hypoglossi; regio thoracis posterior; sanguis venosus et arteriosus; terminatio nervi cutis; tuberositas phalangis distalis; vas lymphaticum superficialis

2. *Write down the dictionary form, translate into Latin:*

accessory pancreas; anterior arch of atlas; blood vessel of hallux; body of nail; canal of great stony nerve; cartilage of nasal septum; cavity of thorax, ciliary margin of iris; endocrine part of pancreas; fornix of pharynx; free part of upper (lower) limb; greater palatine canal; head of phalanx; inguinal falx or conjoint tendon; knee joint; laryngeal vestibule (=vestibule of larynx); neck of the tooth; right medial division; ring-shaped part of fibrous vagina; root canal of tooth; superior ligament of incus; surface of incisor tooth; tale of pancreas; third molar tooth or wisdom tooth; tuberosity of distal phalanx; tympanic cavity of middle ear

§ 45. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 7

Latin-English dictionary

Nouns of the 1st declension

cauda, ae f — tail
gingiva, ae f — gingiva, gum
tunica, ae f — membrane

Nouns of the 2nd declension

bulbus, i m — eyeball
diameter, tri f — diameter
ostium, i n — orifice
uterus, i m — uterus

Nouns of the 3rd declension

appendix, icis f — appendix
auris, is f — ear
cavitas, atis f — cavity
cervix, icis f — cervix
coccyx, ygis m — coccyx, coccygeal bone
iris, idis f — iris (central part of the eye)
phalanx, ngis f — phalanx
pyramis, idis f — pyramid
sanguis, inis m — blood
terminatio, onis f — ending
unguis, is m — nail

Nouns of the 4th declension

meātus, us m — meatus (passage)

plexus, us m — plexus (network, chiefly of veins or nerves)

Adjectives of the 1st group

arteriōsus, a um — arterial

acustīcus, a, um — auditory

canīnus, a um — canine

proprius, a, um — proper

transversus, a, um — transverse

venōsus, ā, um — venous

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alāris, e — alar

ciliāris, e — ciliary

distālis, e — distal

renālis, e — renal

superficiālis, e — superficial

vermiformis, e — vermiform

English-Latin glossary

accessory — accessorius, a, um

blood — sanguis, ĩnis m

cavity — cavitas, ātis f

ciliary — ciliāris, e

conjoint — conjunctīvus, a, um

distal — distālis, e

division — divisio, ōnis f

ear — auris, is f

endocrine — endocrīnus, a, um

falx — falx, falcis f

fornix — fornix, ĩcis m

hallux — hallux, ūcis m

incisor — incisīvus, a um

incus — incus, ūdis f

inguinal — inguinalis, e

iris — iris, ĩdis f

larynx — larynx, yngis m

limb — membrum, i n

medial — mediālis, e

middle — medius, a, um

molar — molāris, e

molar tooth — dens molāris

nail — unguis, is m
 pancreas — pancreas, ātis n
 phalanx — phalanx, ngis f
 tail — cauda, ae f
 third — tertius, a, um
 tendon — tendo, ĩnis m
 tympanic — tympanĭcus, a, um
 wisdom — sapientia, ae f

Lesson 8 NEUTRAL GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

§ 46. SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE NEUTRAL NAMES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

All neutral names in the third declension may be systematized in the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Examples	Exception
-al	-ālis	anĭmal, ālis n <i>animal</i>	
-ar	-āris	calcar, āris n <i>spur</i>	
-e	-is	rete, is n <i>network</i>	
-en	-ĭnis	abdōmen, ĩnis n <i>abdomen</i>	lien, ēnis m <i>spleen</i> ren, renis m <i>kidney</i> pecten, ĭnis m <i>pecten, crest</i>
-ma (words of Greek origin)	-ātis	diaphragma, ātis n <i>diaphragm</i>	forma, ae f <i>form</i> ; gemma, ae f <i>bud</i> ; mamma, ae f <i>breast</i> ; norma, ae f <i>norm</i> ; rima, ae f <i>rima, fissure, opening</i> ; squama, ae f <i>squamous part, scales</i> ; struma, ae f <i>goiter</i>
-ur	ōris ŭris	femur, ōris n <i>femur, thigh bone</i> sulfur, ŭris n <i>sulphur</i>	
-us	ĕris ōris uris	glomus, ĕris n <i>glomus, enlargement</i> pectus, ōris n <i>chest</i> crus, cruris n (<i>1. shank, leg; 2. crus, limb (auditory ossicle); 3. bundle (of myocardium)</i>)	
-ut	-ĭtis	caput, ĭtis n (head)	

Attention! In the noun *hepar* the last but one vowel of the Genitive form is short: *hepātis*. Moreover, the stem of this form contains the consonant “**t**”.

**§ 47. SOME EXPLANATIONS CONCERNING
THE NOUNS HAVING SIMILAR ENDINGS BUT DIFFERENT GENDER
AND DECLENSION**

Now, after having analyzed practically all noun endings of the third declension in the Nominative and the Genitive you can see that sometimes nouns of different gender and declension may possess the same ending in the Nominative. We can single out at least three groups of such nouns.

1. The most numerous are the nouns with the final element **-us** in the Nominative. Such nouns are found in the 2nd declension and are, as a rule, masculine, but, as we shall see in the pharmaceutical part of our course, the names of trees with the ending **-us** are feminine. Compare:

musculus, i m; sulcus, i m but: Eucalyptus, i f

The ending **-us** may have the nouns of the feminine and neutral genders belonging to the 3rd declension:

incus, ūdis f; corpus, ōris n.

Finally, not only the nouns of the masculine gender (ductus, us m; processus, us m) have the ending — us in the 4th declension. You should memorize the noun manus, us f (hand), and in the pharmaceutical part you will come across the word Quercus, us f (oak).

2. When studying the endings of the neutral gender in the 3rd declension you could pay attention to the two groups of the nouns with the ending **-ma**:

1) diaphragma, ātis n (nouns of Greek origin) but 2) gemma, ae f (seven nouns of Latin origin).

3. Finally, let us analyse the nouns with the ending **-er**. They are not very numerous and may occur among masculine nouns of the 2nd declension (cancer, cri m). Some of them may be feminine (diameter, tri f). The nouns of the 3rd declension with such an ending may be masculine (trochanter, ēris m), feminine (mater, tris f) and neutral (tuber, ěris n).

Summing up, we have to conclude that a Nominative ending can never give us complete and correct information about the grammar status of a noun. We should memorize every noun only in the dictionary form with all its three elements. Only in this way we can avoid making bad grammar mistakes.

§ 48. EXERCISES

1. *Make up grammar agreement of the adjectives with the following nouns:*

arcus (dentālis, e; superior, ius; venōsus, a, um); caput (longus, a, um; brevis, e; anterior, ius); cartilāgo (accessorius, a, um; major, jus; alāris, e); crus (ampullāris, e; osseus, a, um; dexter, tra, trum); ligamentum (latus, a, um; longitudinālis, e; minor, us); margo (sinister, tra, trum; teres, ětis; superior, ius); paries (posterior, ius; internus, a, um; simplex, ĭcis); rete (venōsus, a, um; articulāris, e; simplex, ĭcis); tuber (frontālis, e; anterior, ius; major, jus)

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

calicūlus gustatorius seu gemma gustatoria; corpus adipōsum orbītae; corpus ossis femōris; crus anterius capsūlae internaе; diaphragma pelvis; forāmen mastoideum ossis temporālis; glomus carotīcum; pecten ossis pubis; porta hepātis; rima vestibūli laryngis; segmentum renis superius; squama ossis occipitālis; systēma respiratorium

3. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:

accessory spleen; anterior region of thigh; body of gallbladder; central nervous system; culmen of the body of cerebellum; dorsal venous network of hand; epigastric region of abdomen; fissure for ligamentum longum of liver; forehead and occiput of head; gastric surface of spleen; hand region; inferior segment of right kidney, lactiferous duct of breast; left crus of diaphragm; mobile liver; optic chiasm; pulvinar of thalamus; rete mirabile; simple membranous crus; squamous part of frontal bone; stroma and parenchyma of thyroid gland; stroma of iris; tegmen of the fourth ventricle; the longest muscle of head

§ 49. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 8

Latin-English vocabulary

1st declension

capsūla, ae f — capsula

gemma, ae f — bud

orbīta, ae f — orbit

porta, ae f — porta (gate of the liver)

rima, ae f — fissure, opening

squama, ae f — squamous part, scales

vesīca, ae f — bladder

2nd declension

calicūlus, i m (gustatorius) — bud

segmentum, i n — segment

3rd declension

crus, cruris n — 1) shank, leg; 2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle); 3) bundle (of myocardium)

diaphragma, ātis n — diaphragm

femur, ōris n — femur, thigh (bone)

hepar, ātis n — liver

glomus, ěris n — body, enlargement (choroidal), glomus (aortic)

pecten, ĩnis m — pecten (crest)

pubes, is f — pubis

rete, is n — 1) rete (mirabile); 2) network (dorsal venous network of hand)

systēma, ātis n — system

Adjectives of the 1st group

adipōsus, a, um — fat
carotīcus, a, um — carotid
felleus, a, um (=biliaris, e) — gall (+Noun)
gustatorius, a, um — taste (+Noun)
osseus, a, um — bony
respiratorius, a, um — respiratory

Adjectives of the 2nd group

ampullāris, e — ampullary
biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um) — gall (+Noun)
dentālis, e — dental
longitudinālis, e — longitudinal

English-Latin vocabulary

breast — mamma, ae f
central — centrālis, e
chiasm — chiasma, ātis n
crus — crus, cruris n
culmen — culmen, ĩnis n
diaphragm — diaphragma, ātis
epigastric — epigastrīcus, a, um
forehead — sincĭput, ĩtis n
fourth — quartus, a, um
gallbladder — vesīca fellea (=vesīca biliāris)
gastric — gastrīcus, a, um
hand — manus, us f
lactiferous — lactifĕrus, a, um
liver — hepar, ātis n
membranous — membranaceus, a, um
mobile — mobĭlis, e
occiput — occĭput, ĩtis n
optic — optīcus, a, um
parenchyma — parenchĕma, ātis n
pulvinar — pulvĭnar, āris n
rete — rete, is n
spleen — lien, ĕnis m
stroma — stroma, ātis n
system — systĕma, ātis n
tegmen — tegmen, ĩnis n
thalamus — thalāmus, i m
thigh — femur, ōris n
ventricle — vertricŭlus, i m

Lesson 9 NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 50. NOMINATIVE PLURAL ENDINGS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The Nominative plural forms for both nouns and adjectives are formed by adding the Nominative plural endings to their stem. These endings, particularly in the 2nd, 3rd and 4th declensions, depend on the gender and declension of nouns and adjectives, as shown in this table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Stem	Nominative Plural endings	Nominative Plural Form
I	f	vertebra thoracica	vertebr- thoracic-	-ae	vertebrae thoracicae
II	m	sulcus dexter	sulc- dextr-	-i	sulci dextri
	n	septum latum ganglion oticum	sept- lat- gangli- otic-	-a	septa lata ganglia otica
III	m	homo sapiens	homin- sapien-	-es	homīnes sapientes
	f	pars commūnis	part- commun-	es	partes commūnes
	n	rete mirabile	ret- mirabil-	-ia	retia mirabilia
		foramen anterior	foramin- anterior-	-a	foramīna anteriora
IV	m	processus	process-	-us	processus
	n	cornu	corn-	-ua	cornua
V	f	facies	faci-	-es	facies

As we can observe, only neutral nouns of the 3rd declension have two variants. The following rules of their ending differentiation are to be memorized.

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular get the ending **-ia** :

animal (Nom. sing.) — animalia (Nom. plur.)

pulvīnar (Nom. sing.) — pulvinaria (Nom. plur.)

rete (Nom. sing.) — retia (Nom. plur.)

2. Neutral adjectives of the 3rd declension except for adjectives in the comparative form get the ending **-ia**:

Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative Plural form
acer, cris, cre	acre	acr-	acria
celer, ěris, ěre	celěre	celěr-	celeria
frontālis, e	frontāle	frontāl-	frontālia
brevis, e	breve	brev-	brevia
sapiens, ntis	sapiens	sapien-	sapientia
impar, āris	impar	impar-	imparia
simplex, ěcis	simplex	simplic-	simplicia

Nouns which don't belong to the first point of the shown above rule as well as adjectives in the comparative form get the ending **-a** in the Nominative plural:
 foramen superius (sing.) — foramīna superiōra (plur.)
 caput minus (sing.) — capīta minōra (plur.)

§ 51. ABBREVIATIONS OF NOMINATIVE PLURAL FORMS USED IN ANATOMICAL TERMS

A certain number of nouns in the anatomical terms is used in the shortened forms. You have to memorize these abbreviations:

Singular form		Plural form	
Full form	Abbreviation	Full form	Abbreviation
arteria	A.	arteriae	Aa.
bursa	B.	bursae	Bb.
forāmen	F.	foramīna	Forr.
ganglion	Gangl.	ganglia	Gangll.
glandūla	Gl.	glandūlae	Gll.
ligamentum	Lig.	ligamenta	Ligg.
musculus	M.	musculi	Mm.
nervus	N.	nervi	Nn.
nucleus	Nucl.	nuclei	Nucll.
ramus	R.	rami	Rr.
vagīna	Vag.	vagīnae	Vagg.
vena	V.	venae	Vv.

§ 52. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form, translate into Latin and then make up the Nominative plural of each word combination:

cervical surface; coccygeal horn; greater palatine canal; impar ganglion; inferior nuchal line; jugular foramen; posterior tubercle; rete mirabile; sphenoid process; superior nasal meatus; temporal fossa; thoracic region; tympanic cavity; zygomatic bone

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

Aa. ciliāres posteriōres breves; cartilagīnes laryngis; Forr. palatīna minōra; Gangll. pelvīca; Gll. thyroideae accessoriae; impressiōnes digitātae seu juga cerebralia; labia oris; Ligg. collateralia; Mm. rotatōres cervīcis; Nn. splachnīci sacrāles; nomīna anatomīca; Nucll. vestibulāres; orgāna oculi accessoria; ossa cranii; partes corpōris humāni; plicae transversae recti; radīces craniāles; rami capsulae internae; rami cardiāci thoracīci; Rr. dorsāles linguae; regiōnes membri superiōris; systemāta genitalia viri et femīnae; Vv. hepatīcae dextrae; Vv. temporāles profundae

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

anterior and posterior divisions; auditory ossicles; blood vessels of retina; borders of the nail; cavities of the body; costal notches; cranial nerves and

sutures; eyebrows and eyelashes; general terms; incisive canals; joints of pelvic girdle; lesser palatine foramina; minor salivary glands; muscular branches of common fibular (peroneal) nerve; muscles of back proper; permanent teeth; planes, lines and regions; posterior ethmoidal cells; renal pyramids; true and false ribs; transverse folds of rectum; roots, trunks and cords of brachial plexus

§ 53. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 9

Latin-English vocabulary

1st declension

femīna, ae f — woman
plica, ae f — fold
sutūra, ae f — suture

2nd declension

jugum, i n — yoke
ramus, i m — branch
rectum, i n — rectum
vir, i m — man

3rd declension

impressio, ōnis f — impression
nomen, ĩnis n — name

Adjectives of the 1st group

anatomīcus, a, um — anatomical
digitātus, a, um — digitate
humānus, a, um — human
otīcus, a, um — otic

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolāris, e — alveolar
cerebrālis, e — cerebral
collaterālis, e — collateral
dorsālis, e — dorsal
genitālis, e — genital

English-Latin glossary

brachial — brachiālis, e
branch — ramus, i m
cell — cellŭla, ae f
cord — fascicŭlus, i m
division — divisio, ōnis f
eyebrow — supercilium, i n
eyelash — cilium, i n
false — spurius, a, um
fibular (=peroneal) — fibulāris (=peronēus, a, um)

fossa — fossa, ae f
 fold — plica, ae f
 general — generālis, e
 girdle — cingulum, i n
 jugular — jugulāris, e
 impar — impar, āris
 incisive — incisīvus, a, um
 line — linea, ae f
 mirabile — mirābilis, e
 muscular — musculāris, e
 notch — incisūra, ae f
 ossicle — ossiculum, i n
 permanent — permānens, ntis
 plane — planum, i n
 proper — proprius, a, um
 retina — retīna, ae f
 salivary — salivarius, a. um
 suture — sutūra, ae f
 true — verus, a, um
 trunk — truncus, i m
 term — terminus, i m
 zygomatic — zygomaticus, a, um

Lesson 10

GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 54. GENITIVE PLURAL ENDINGS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Both nouns and adjectives get the Genitive plural forms by adding the Genitive plural endings to their stem depending mostly on noun and adjective declension, as one may see in the following table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Stems	Genitive plural endings	Genitive plural forms
I	f	vertebra thoracica	vertebr- thoracic-	-ārum	vertebrārum thoracicārum
II	m n	sulcus dexter ganglion oticum	sulc- dextr- gangl- otic-	-ōrum	sulcōrum dextrōrum gangliōrum oticōrum
III	m f	canālis brevis dens permanens pars	canal- brev- dent- permanent- part-	-ium	canalium brevium dentium permanentium partium

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Stems	Genitive plural endings	Genitive plural forms
III	n	laterālis	lateral-	-ium	lateralium
		vertebrāle	vertebral-		vertebrālium
	os	oss-	ossium		
	simplex	simplic-	simplicium		
	rete	ret-	retium		
	articulāre	articular-	articularium		
	m	margo	margo		margin-
anterior			anterior-	anteriorum	
articulatio		articulatio	articulation-	articulatiōnum	
		inferior	inferior-	inferiorum	
forāmen		forāmen	foramin-	foramīnum	
	majus	major-	majorum		
IV	m	arcus	arc-	-uum	arcuum
	n	cornu	corn-		cornuum
V	f	facies	faci-	-ērum	faciērum

As we can see, masculine, feminine and neutral nouns and adjectives of the third declension have two variants of the endings.

The ending **-ium** is added to the stems of:

1. Parisyllaba, i. e. the masculine and feminine nouns which have equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive: canālis, is m *canal*; basis, is f *base*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral nouns, if their stem ends with two consonants: dens, dentis m *tooth*; pars, partis f *part*; os, ossis n *bone*.

3. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular: anīmal, ālis n *animal*; calcar, āris n *calcar (spur)*; rete, is n *net, network*

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree, see in the table above the adjectives articulāris, e articular; brevis, e short; laterālis, e lateral; permanens, ntis permanent; simplex, ĩcis simple.

The ending **-um** is added to the stems of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, see, e. g., in the table the nouns margo, ĩnis m *border*; articulatio, ōnis f *joint*; forāmen, ĩnis n *opening*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, see in the table the adjectives anterior, ius *anterior*; inferior, ius *upper*; major, jus *major, larger, greater*.

Some Latin nouns are used only in plural and their dictionary forms are accordingly represented in the Nominative and Genitive plural: fauces, faucium f fauces; species, ērum (speciērum) f species.

Attention! The noun vas, vasis n in singular belongs to the third declension, but in plural — to the second one. Compare: *nervi vasis* — nerves of a vessel, but *nervi vasōrum* — nerves of the vessels.

§ 55. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and make up Genitive plural form of each word combination:

anterior tubercle; costal process; floating rib; greater wing; internal base; left spur; lesser opening; lesser sublingual duct; longitudinal ligament; long root; permanent tooth; posterior surface; respiratory region; right crest; sacral horn; short muscle; simple joint; venous network; vertebral canal

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

ligamenta ossiculōrum auditoriōrum; medulla ossium flava et rubra; musculi arrectōres pilōrum; musculi palāti et faucium; nervi vasōrum lymphaticōrum; ostia venārum pulmonalium; plexus cavernōsi conchārum; processus accessorius vertebrārum lumbalium; situs viscērum inversus; vagīnae fibrōsae digitōrum manus

3. Give the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

arteries of lower limbs; curvature of the stomach walls; dividing walls of the frontal sinuses; grooves for extensor muscle tendons; heads of the true, false and floating ribs; muscles of auditory ossicles; muscles of soft palate and faucium; nerves and vessels of vessels; nodules of semilunar cusps; sinuses of the venae cavae (Gen. plur.!); surface of the permanent teeth; tubercles of thoracic vertebrae (Gen. plur.!)

§ 56. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 10

Latin-English vocabulary Nouns of the 1st declension

medulla, ae f — medulla

vagīna, ae f (of muscle) — sheath

Nouns of the 2nd declension

ossicūlum, i n — ossicle

ostium, i n — opening

palātum, i n — palate

pilus, i m — hair

Nouns of the 3rd declension

m. arrector, oris m — arrector

fauces, ium f — fauces

viscus, ěris n; usually Plur. viscēra, um n — viscera, inner organs

Nouns of the 4th declension

manus, us f — hand

situs, us m — site

Adjectives of the 1st group

auditorius, a, um — auditory

cavernōsus, a, um — cavernous

fibrōsus, a, um — fibrous

flavus, a, um — yellow
inversus, a, um — inverse
ruber, bra, brum — red

Adjectives of the 2nd group

lumbālis, e — lumbar
pulmonālis, e — pulmonary

English-Latin glossary

cavae — cavus, a, um
curvature — curvatūra, ae f
cusp — valvūla, ae f
extensor (unbending muscle) — m. extensor, ōris m
false — falsus, a, um
floating — fluctuans, ntis
limb — membrum, i n
nodule — nodūlus, i n
ossicle — ossicūlum, i n
palate — palātum, i n
permanent — permānens, ntis
respiratory — respiratorius, a, um
semilunar — semilunāris, e
soft — mollis, e
spur — calcar, āris n
stomach — gaster, tris f
true — verus, a, um
venae — vena, ae f
wall — paries, ētis m

Lesson 11

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

§ 57. ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL ENDINGS

The Latin Accusative case reflects the direct object by answering the questions “Whom? What?”. In this function it corresponds to the Russian case called “Винительный” or in German — to the case Akkusativ.

Both nouns masculine and feminine as well as adjectives get the Accusative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stem, as one may see in the table below. Neutral nouns and adjectives have no special Accusative endings: Accusative singular form corresponds to the form of the Nominative singular and the Accusative plural form — to the form of the Nominative plural:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Acc. sing. ending	Accusative singular form	Acc. pl. ending	Accusative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-am	venam cavam	-as	venas cavas
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-um	ramum dextrum sulcum palatīnum	-os	ramos dextros sulcos palatīnos
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. sing.	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom.pl. (-a)	ganglia otīca septa longa
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens	-em	margīnem anteriōrem canālem nutrientem	-es	margīnes antriōres; canāles nutrientes
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex pelvis major	-em (-im)	partem laterālem basim simplicem pelvim majōrem	-es	partes laterāles bases simplices pelves majōres
	n	rete capillāre crus posterius	=Nom. sing.	rete capillāre crus posterius	=Nom. pl. (-a,-ia)	retia capillaria crura posteriōra
IV	m	processus	-um	processum	-us	processus
	n	cornu	=Nom. sing.	cornu	=Nom. pl. (-ua)	cornua
V	f	facies	-em	faciem	-es	facies

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns in the Accusative singular can get endings **-im** or **-em**. The ending **-im** should have:

1. Nouns with the ending **-sis** in the Nominative singular:

basis, is f *basis* — basim; dosis, is f *dose* — dosim

2. Nouns pelvis, is f *pelvis* — pelvim; febris, is f *fever* — febrim; tussis, is f *cough* — tussim

§ 58. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

Preposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
ad	1) to, toward 2) for 3) during, in	ad nervum trigemīnum ad usum externum ad morbum hypertonicum	to the trigeminal nerve for the external use in the hypertonic disease
ante	before, in front of	ante operatiōnem ante pulmōnem dextrum	before the operation in front of the right lung
circum	(a)round	circum liēnem	around the spleen
contra	for	contra febrim	for the fever
in	in, into, on (when answering the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”)	in oesophāgum in partem dextram in canālem longum	into the oesophagus on the right part in the long canal
infra	below, under	infra cor	below (under) the heart

Preposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
inter	among, between	inter vasa manus inter duo ossa	among the vessels of the hand between two bones
intra	inside	intra thorācem	inside the thorax
per	1) through, via 2) by (means of)	per canālem optīcum per ligamenta	through (via) the optic canal by (means of) the ligaments
post	after, behind	post operationem post costam	after the operation behind the rib
sub	under (when answering the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”)	sub scapulā dextram sub ganglion submandibulāre	under the right shoulder blade under the submandibular ganglion
super, supra	above	super (supra) margīnem sinistrum supra (super) labium superius	above the left margin above the upper lip

§ 59. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up forms of the Nominative singular, Accusative singular and plural:

anterior margin; ascending artery; external base; frontal surface; greater pelvis; hepatic duct; left lung; lesser horn; lymphatic vessel; nasal bone; right part; respiratory system; short nerve; vertebral canal

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:

adītus ad antrum; ante operationem difficīlem; ante pulmonem dextrum; circum oculum dextrum; in canālem dentis incisivi; in pariētem gastris; inter ossa; intra venam faciālem; in musculos laryngis; per os; per pelvim minōrem; per rectum; post partum; rami ad medullam oblongātam; sub cor; sub ligamenta flava

3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:

above the left lung; after death; among the incisors; before and after childbirth; between the leg bones; by means of the long canal; for cough; for internal (external) use; into the deep vein; inside the stomach artery; on the superior surface; round the mouth; through the abdomen; under the right kidney; via the common carotid artery

§ 60. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 11

Latin-English vocabulary

Prepositions used with the Accusative

ad — 1) to; 2) for; 3) during

ante — before, in front of

circum — around, round

contra — against

in (to the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”) — in, into, on

infra — below, under
intra — among, between (two objects)
per — through, via 2) by (means of)
post — after (time), behind (place)
sub (to the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”) — under
super, supra — above, over

Other words

aditus, us m — aditus
antrum, i n — antrum, cave
auricularis, e — auriculare
difficilis, e — difficult
flavus, a, um — yellow
medulla, ae f — medulla
oblongatus, a, um — oblongata (medulla)

English-Latin vocabulary

Prepositions

above — super, supra
after — post
among (more than two objects) — inter
around — circum
before — ante
behind — post
between (two objects) — inter
by (means of) — per
during — ad
for — ad
in — in (to the question “where to?”)
in front of — ante
inside — intra
into — in (to the question “where to?”)
on — in (to the question “where to?”)
round — see around
to — ad
through — per
under — infra, sub (to the question “where to?”)

Other words

ascending — ascendens, ntis
childbirth — partus, us m
cough — tussis, is f
death — mors, mortis f
leg — pes, pedis m

operation — operatio, ōnis f
 use — usus, us m

Lesson 12

ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

§ 61. ABLATIVE AND ITS FORMATION

Ablative is the Latin case reflecting different circumstances and conditions which characterize the indirect object (mood of the action, time, place, reason and so on).

Both nouns and adjectives get the Ablative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stems, as one may see in the table below:

Dec- len- sion	Gen- der	Nominative singular	Abl. sing. ending	Ablative singular form	Abl. plur. ending	Ablative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-ā	vena cava	-is	venis cavis
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-o	ramo dextro sulco palatīno	-is	ramis dextris sulcis palatīnis
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum		ganglio otīco septo longo		gangliis otīcis septis longis
III	m	margo anterior	-e (-i)	margīne anteriōre	-ībus	marginībus anteriorībus canalībus nutrientībus
		canālis nutriens		canāle nutrienti		
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex	-e (-i)	parte laterāli basi simplīci	-ībus	partībus lateralībus basībus simplīcībus
n	rete capillāre crus posterius	reti capillāri crure posteriōre		retībus capillarībus crurībus posteriorībus		
IV	m	processus	-u	processu	-ībus	processībus
	n	cornu	-u	cornu		cornībus
V	f	facies	-e	facie	-ēbus	faciēbus

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns and adjectives in the Ablative singular can get endings **-e** or **-i**.

The ending **-i** is added to the stem of:

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular (we have already mentioned these nouns in the previous lessons): *animāl*, *ālis* n — *animāli*; *calcar*, *āris* n — *calcāri*; *rete*, *is* n — *reti*.

2. Four feminine nouns: *pelvis*, *is* f *pelvis* — *pelvi*; *febris*, *is* f *fever* — *febri*; *tussis*, *is* f *cough* — *tussi*.

3. Feminine nouns with the ending **-sis**: basis, is f *base* — basi.

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree as well as participles: brevis, e — brevi; capillāris, e — capillāri; simplex, ĩcis — simplici; fluctuans, ntis — fluctuanti.

The ending **-e** is added to the stem of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the first three groups of the explained above rules, — see, e. g., in the table the nouns canālis, margo, pars, crus.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, — see in the table the adjective anterior, ius and posterior, ius.

§ 62. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

Proposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
a, ab (before a vowel)	from	a sulco rhināli ab axe optico	from rhinal sulcus from optical axis
cum	with	cum nervo faciāli cum feбри continua	with facial nerve with continued fever
de	about	de ossibus cranii	about the skull bones
e (ex)	1) from (about the movement from within) 2) of, from (about material)	e canāle sacrāli e cavitāte abdominis ex fructibus Rosae e fibris elastĳcis	from the sacral canal from the abdomen cavity of dog-rose fruits from elastic fibers
in	(when answering the question "where?") in, on	in cavitāte pleurāli in facie unguis	in the pleural cavity on the nail surface
pro	for	pro reti venōso guttae pro oculis	for venous network drops for eyes
sine	without	sine pancreāte accessorio sine dentibus serotinis	without accessory pancreas without wisdom teeth
sub	(when answering the question "where?") under	sub cute capitis sub narcōsi locāli	under the skin of head under a local anesthesia

§ 63. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up the forms of the Ablative singular and plural:

accessory pancreas; continued fever; bony tissue; canine tooth; floating rib; inner base; left canal; lesser pelvis; long spur; lymphatic vessel; right region; sacral horn; short nerve; simple joint

2. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from Latin into English:

ab angulo inferiōre scapulae; a crista capitis costae; cum feбри continua; de structurā partium corpōris humani; de terminis generalibus; glandulae sine ductibus; in facie unguis; in regionibus membri superiōris; pro reti venōso;

sanguis ex vena pro analýsi; sub musculis facialibus; sub tunica musculāri; tunica e textu connectivo

3. *Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from English into Latin:*

about the abdominal muscles; a medicine from the forest plants; for external use; for nervous system; from the head to the feet; from the surface of knee; in the heart artery; in the thoracic vein; on the nose skin; under a local (general) anesthesia; with a wandering kidney; without upper wisdom teeth

§ 64. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 12

Latin-English vocabulary Prepositions used with the Ablative

a, ab — from

cum — with

de — about, of

e, ex — from, of

in (when answering the question “where?”) — in, on

pro — for

sine — without

sub (when answering the question “where?”) — under

Other words

connectivus, a, um — connective

continuus, a, um — continued

faciālis, e — facial

generālis, e — general

glandŭla, ae f — gland

humānus, a, um — human

musculāris, e — muscular

scapŭla, ae f — scapula

structŭra, ae f — structure

termīnus, i m — term

tunīca, ae f — layer, coat

English-Latin vocabulary

anesthesia — anaesthesia, ae f

continued — continuus, a, um

forest — silvestris, e

general — generālis, e

local — locālis, e

medicine — medicamentum, i n

plant — planta, ae f

wandering — migrans, ntis

Lesson 13 PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

§ 65. PREFIXATION IN THE WORD BUILDING

Prefixation is the way of word building by adding prefixes to the stem of nouns or adjectives. As a result new meanings of the word are received in which any additional circumstances characteristic of the noun or adjective arise, mainly in respect of space if it concerns anatomical terms, e. g.:

brachium, i n (brachium) + ante (before) → antebrachium, i n —
antebrachium

cervicālis, e (cervical) + endo (within) → endocervicālis, e — endocervical

cutaneus, a, um (cutaneous) + sub (under) → subcutaneus, a, um —
subcutaneous

§ 66. PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Both Greek and Latin prefixes are widely used in anatomical terms. Some of them have the same meaning and in these cases choosing the prefix depends only on tradition of using this or that word in a certain term. In other cases, Greek and Latin prefixes don't duplicate the meaning of each other. According to this connection, we place Greek and Latin prefixes in two tables.

Greek and Latin prefixes with identical meaning

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
above – under			
above, over	epi-	super- supra-	epigastrium, i n — epigastrium superficiālis, e — superficial suprarenālis, e — suprarenal
below, under	hypo-	infra- sub-	hypoglossus, a um — hypoglossal infraorbitālis, e — infraorbital sublinguālis, e — sublingual
before – behind			
after, behind	meta-	post-, retro-	metatarsus, i m — metatarsus postcavālis, e — postcaval retromandibulāris, e — retromandibular
inside – outside			
within	en-, endo-	intra-	encephālon, i n — brain endocervicālis, e — endocervical intracellularis, e — intracellular
outside, of	ecto-, exo-	extra	ectoderma, ātis n — ectoderm exoskelēton, i n — exoskeleton extracellulāris, e — extracellular
between or the middle part			
between or the middle	dia-, di-, meso-,	inter-	diastēma, ātis n — diastema mesoderma, ātis n — mesoderm

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
part	mes-		mesencephālon, i n — mesencephalon, the midbrain intercostālis, e — intrecostal
together, joined			
together, joined	syn- sym-	col-, com-, con-, cor-	synostōsis, is f — synostosis; symphŷsis, is f — symphysis; commissūra, ae f — commissure; collaterālis, e — collateral connectīvus, a, um — connective m.corrugātor, ōris m — corrugator
not, without			
absence, denying	a-, an- (before a vowel)	in-, im-, ir-	azygos (undeclinable) — azygous anonŷmus, a, um — innominate insensibīlis, e — insensible; impar, āris — impar; irregulāris, e — irregular
against, opposite			
against, opposite	anti-	contra-	antitrāgus, i m — antitragus anticorpus, ōris n — antibody contralaterālis, e — contralateral
from, away from			
away from	apo-	a-, ab-	apocrīnus, a, um — apocrine apophŷsis, is f — apophysis m. abductor, ōris m — abductor
around, round			
around	peri-	circum-	pericardium, i n — pericardium circumorālis, e — circumoral
through			
through	dia-	per-	diaphragma, ātis n — diaphragm perspiratio, ōnis f — perspiration
out of			
out, out of	ec-, ex-	e-, ex-	eccrīnus, a, um — eccrine effērens, ntis — efferent exostōsis, is f — exostosis excretorius, a, um — excretory

Greek and Latin prefixes without mutual semantic duplication

Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin examples and English equivalents
–	ad-, ac-, af-, ap-	adition, movement nearer	adrenālis, e — adrenal accessorius, a, um — accessory affērens, ntis — afferent appendix, ĩcis f — appendix
–	de-	1. removing 2. downward	m. detrūsor, ōris m — detrusor m. depressor, ōris m — depressor
–	dis-, dif-, di-	spreading	disseminātus, a, um — disseminated diffūsus, a, um — diffuse m. dilatator, ōris m — dilator
–	in-, im-	moving inward	infundibūlum, i n — infundibulum impressio, ōnis f — impression

Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin examples and English equivalents
–	re-	again or repeated action	reactio, ōnis f — reaction recessus, us m — recessus, recess reuniens, ntis — reunient
para-		beside, near	paracervix, īcis f — paracervix paranasālis, e — paranasal

§ 67. GREEK AND LATIN NUMERALS AS PREFIXES

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
one	mono-	uni-	mononucleāris, e — mononuclear unicellulāris, e — unicellular
two	di-	bi-	digastrīcus, a um — digastric bifurcatio, ōnis f — bifurcation
three	tri-	tri-	trigōnum, i n — trigonum, triangle, trigone trigemīnus, a, um — trigeminus
four	tetra-	quadri-	tetrāpus, ōdos — tetrapus quadrīceps, ipītis — quadriceps
half	hemi-	semi-	hemispherium, i n — hemisphere semicanālis, is m — semicanal

§ 68. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English taking into consideration the meaning of prefixes:

adhesio interthalamīca; apparātus respiratorius seu systēma respiratorium; circumferentia articulāris; dentes decidui; eminentia collaterālis; fibrae periventriculāres; glandūla parotidea accessoria; impressio suprarenālis; lamella circumferentiālis externa; ligamenta metacarpalia interossea; mesocōlon transversum; muscūlus bipennātus; ossa metatarsi; plexus submucōsus; processus intrajugulāris; sectiōnes mesencephalīci; spatium retropharyngēum; substantia perforāta interpedunculāris; symphŷsis intervertebrālis; synchondrōsis intraocipitālis; tractus paraventriculohypophysīālis; tragus et antitragus auriculāe; trigōnum cervicāle anterius; vena retromandibulāris

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and fill in the gaps with the most suitable Latin prefixes using, if necessary, Atlas of Human Anatomy:

arteria ...currens; arteria ...flexa scapūlae; canālis ...circulāris; ligamenta ...capsularia; muscūlus ...pressor angūli oris; muscūlus ...pennātus; nervus ...dūcens; orgāna oculi ...cessoria; recessus ...hepatīci; vas sanguineum ...fōrans; zona ...certa

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and fill in the gaps with the most suitable Greek prefixes using, if necessary, Atlas of Human Anatomy:

... cōlon descendens; ...condŷlus laterālis; fossa ...helīcis; ...gōnum habenūlae ...encephāli; glandūla ...statīca; glandūlae ...crinae; muscūlus ...gastrīcus; plexus ... gastrīcus; recessus ... tympanīcus; regio ...chondriāca;

... spherium cerebelli; spatium ...pharyngēum; tractus ... encephalicus nervi trigemīni

4. *Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:*

accessory pancreatic duct; common interosseous artery; external intercostal muscles; fascia of forearm; interclavicular ligament; intermandibular suture; interlobar artery; intraglandular lymphatic node; interosseal nerves of leg; parapharyngeal space; paravesical fossa; preoccipital notch; semilunar folds of colon; submandibular gland; supraorbital veins; suprapleural membrane

§ 69. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 13

Latin-English glossary

Nouns of the 1st declension

auricūla, ae f — auricle; pinna
circumferentia, ae f — circumference
eminentia, ae f — eminence
lamella, ae f — lamella

Nouns of the 2nd declension

antebrachium, i n — antebrachium, forearm
antitrāgus, i m — antitragus
diencephālon, i n — diencephalon
hemispherium, i n — hemisphere
mesencephālon, i n — mesencephalon
mesocōlon, i n — mesocolon
metatarsus, i m — metatarsus
spatium, i n — space
tragus, i m — tragus
trigōnum, i n — trigone

Nouns of the 3rd declension

adhesio, ōnis f — adhesion
antihēlix, ĩcis f; anthēlix, ĩcis f — antihelix (anthelix)
symphŷsis, is f — symphysis
synchondrōsis, is f — synchondrosis
syndesmōsis, is f — syndesmosis

Nouns of the 4th declension

apparātus, us m — apparatus
recessus, us m — recess

Adjectives of the 1st and 2nd declensions

bipennātus, a, um — bipennate
biventer, tra, trum — two-bellied
deciduus, a, um — deciduous
digitātus, a, um — digitate
endocrīnus, a, um — endocrine

epitympanicus, a, um — epitympanic
incertus, a, um — incerta(zona)
interosseus, a, um — interosseal, interosseous
interthalamicus, a, um — interthalamic
hypochondriacus, a, um — hypochondriac
hypogastricus, a, um — hypogastric
mesencephalicus, a, um — mesencephalic

Adjectives of the 3rd declension

circumferentiālis, e — circumferential
collaterālis, e — collateral
extracapsulāris — extracapsular
interpedunculāris, e — interpeduncular
intervertebrālis, e — intervertebral
intrajugulāris, e — intrajugular
intraoccipitālis, e — intraoccipital
metacarpālis, e — metacarpal
pancreatīcus, a, um — pancreatic
paraventriculohypophysīālis, e — paraventriculohypophysial
periventriculāris, e — periventricular
retromandibulāris, e — retromandibular
semicirculāris, e — semicircular
suprarenālis, e — suprarenal

English-Latin vocabulary

forearm — antebrachium, i n
interclavicular — interclaviculāris, e
interlobar — interlobāris, e
intermandibular — intermandibulāris, e
interosseous — interosseus, a, um
intercostal — intercostālis, e
intraglandular — intraglandulāris, e
parapharyngeal — parapharyngeālis, e
paravesical — paravesicālis, e
preoccipital — preoccipitālis, e
semilunar — semilunāris, e
submandibular — submandibulāris, e
supraorbital — supraorbitālis, e
suprapleural — suprapleurālis, e

**§ 70. MODEL (SAMPLE) OF THE FINAL TEST
IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY**

1. *Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:*

- 1) paries anterior gastris;
- 2) vestibulum oris;
- 3) margo liber unguis;
- 4) pecten ossis pubis;
- 5) partes corporis humani;
- 6) plexus cavernosi concharum;
- 7) ostia venarum pulmonalium.

2. *Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:*

- 1) deep vein of the right leg;
- 2) teres minor muscle;
- 3) groove for inferior petrosal sinus;
- 4) surface of incisor tooth;
- 5) planes, lines and regions;
- 6) heads of the true, false and floating ribs;
- 7) eyebrows and eyelashes.

3. *Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:*

- 1) by means of the long canal;
- 2) through the abdomen;
- 3) with a wandering kidney;
- 4) for nervous system;
- 5) glands without ducts.

To cope with this final test you have to review (revise) thoroughly every home task because all the terms of this test have been taken from your exercises. But the most effective way to success is your thorough learning and preparation for every lesson during the time of your studies.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

a, ab (Abl) from
accessorius, a, um accessory
acusticus, a, um auditory
ad (Acc.) 1) to; 2) for; 3) during
adhesio, ōnis f adhesion
adipōsus, a, um fat
aditus, us m aditus
ala, ae f wing
alāris, e alar
alveolāris, e alveolar
ampullāris, e ampullary
analýsis, is f analysis
anatomīcus, a, um anatomical
angūlus, i m angle
ante (Acc.) 1) before (time);
2) in front of (place)
antebrachium, i n antebrachium,
forearm
anterior, ius anterior
antihēlix, ĩcis f; anthēlix,
ĩcis f antihelix (anthelix)
antitrāgus, i m antitragus
antrum, i n antrum, cave
apex, ĩcis m apex, top
apparātus, us m apparatus
appendix, ĩcis f appendix
arachnoideus, a um arachnoid
arbor, ōris f tree
arbor vitae arbor vitae
arcus, us m arch
arteria, ae f artery
arteriōsus, a um arterial
articulāris, e articular
articulatio, ōnis f joint
atlas, ntis m atlas (the first cervical
vertebra)
auditorius, a, um auditory
auricūla, ae f auricle; pinna
auricularis, e auricular

auris, is f ear

axis, is m axis

B

basis, is f base

biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um) gall
(+noun)

bipennātus, a, um bipennate

biventer, tra, trum two-bellied

brevis, e short

bulbus, i m (ocūli) eyeball

C

cadāver, ěris n cadaver (dead body)

calicūlus, i m (gustatorius) bud

canālis, is m canal

cancer, cri m cancer

canīnus, a um (dens) canine (tooth)

capsūla, ae f capsule

caput, ĩtis n head

cardiācus, a, um cardiac

carotīcus, a, um carotid

cartilāgo, ĩnis f cartilage

cauda, ae f tail

cavernōsus, a, um cavernous

cavītas, ātis f cavity

celer, ěris, ěre rapid, quick (pulse)

cerebellum, i n cerebellum

cerebrālis, e cerebral

cervicālis, e cervical

cervix, ĩcis f cervix

ciliāris, e ciliary

circum (Acc.) around, round

circumferentiālis, e circumferential

circumferentia, ae f circumference

coccygēus, a, um coccygeal

coccyx, ygis m coccyx, coccygeal
bone

cochleāris, e cochlear

collaterālis, e collateral

communīcans, ntis communicative
compositus, a, um complex
concha, ae f concha (shellshaped hole)
connectivus, a, um connective
continuus, a, um continued
contra (Acc.) against, for (cough)
cor, cordis n heart
cornu, us n horn, hornshaped process
corpus, ōris n body
cortex, ĩcis m cortex (crust)
costa, ae f rib
costālis, e costal
craniālis, e cranial
cranium, i n skull
crista, ae f crest
crus, cruris n 1) shank, leg;
2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle);
3) bundle (of myocardium)
cum (Abl.) with
cutis, is f skin

D

de (Abl.) about, of
deciduus, a, um deciduous
dens, dentis m tooth
dens canīnus canine tooth
dens deciduus deciduous tooth
dens incisivus incisor tooth
dens molāris molar tooth
dens permānens permanent tooth
dens premolāris premolar tooth
dens sapientiae wisdom tooth
dentālis, e dental
dexter, tra, trum right
diamēter, tri f diameter
diaphragma, ātis n diaphragm
diencephālon, i n diencephalon
difficilis, e difficult
digastrīcus, a, um digastric
digitātus, a, um digitate

digītus, i m finger, toe
distālis, e distal
dorsālis, e dorsal
ductus, us m duct
duodēnum, i n duodenum
dura mater dura mater
(the outermost meninx of the brain)
durus, a, um solid

E

e, ex (Abl.) from, of
eminētia, ae f eminence
encephālon i n brain
endocrīnus, a, um endocrine
et and
epitympanīcus, a, um epitympanic
externus, a, um external
extracapsulāris extracapsular

F

faciālis, e facial
facies, ēi f face, surface
fascia, ae f fascia
fascia lata fascia lata
fauces, ium f fauces
febris, is f fever
felleus, a, um (= biliaris, e) gall (+noun)
femīna, ae f woman
femur, ōris n femur, thigh (bone)
fibra, ae f fibre
fibrōsus, a, um fibrous
flavus, a, um yellow
forāmen, ĩnis n opening
fossa, ae f fossa (little hole)
frontālis, e frontal

G

ganglion, i n nervous node
gaster, tris f stomach
gemma, ae f bud

generālis, e general
genitālis, e genital
gingīva, ae f gingiva, gum
glandŭla, ae f gland
glomus, ěris n a cluster of blood vessels, glomus
gustatorius, a, um taste (+noun)

H

hemispherium, i n hemisphere
hepar, ātis n liver
hepatīcus, a, um
homo, ĩnis m man
humānus, a, um human
hyoideus, a, um hyoid, sublingual (bone)
hypochondriācus, a, um
hypochondriac
hypogastrīcus, a, um hypogastric
hypoglossus, a, um hypoglossal, sublingual (nerve)

I

iliācus, a, um iliac
impar, āris impar, unpaired
impressio, ōnis f impression
imus, a, um imus (ima), the lowest
in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”,
Russian “куда?”) in, into, on
in (Abl., when answering the question “where?”,
Russian “где?”) in, on
incertus, a, um incerta (zona)
incisīvus, a, um (dens) incisor
incisūra, ae f incisure, slit or notch
inferior, ius inferior
infra (Acc.) below, under
inter (Acc.) among, between (two objects)
interclaviculāris, e interclavicular
intercostālis, e intercostal

interlobāris, e interlobar
intermandibulāris, e
intermandibular
internus, a, um internal
interosseus, a, um interosseal, interosseous
interpedunculāris, e interpeduncular
interthalamīcus, a, um interthalamic
intervertebrālis, e intervertebral
intra (Acc.) inside, in
intraglandulāris, e intraglandular
intrajugulāris, e intrajugular
intraoccipitālis, e intraoccipital
inversus, a, um inverse
iris, ĩdis f iris (central part of the eye)

J

jugum, i n yoke

L

labium, i n lip
lamella, ae f lamella
larynx, yngis m larynx
latus, a, um broad
liber, ěra, ěrum free
ligamentum, i n ligament
lingua, ae f tongue
longissīmus, a, um the longest
longitudinālis, e longitudinal
longus, a, um long
lumbālis, e lumbar
lymphatīcus, a, um lymphatic

M

magnus, a, um large (vein), magnus (m. adductor), great (nerve)
major, jus major, greater, larger
mandibŭla, ae f lower jaw, mandible
manus, us f hand
margo, ĩnis m margin, border
massĕter, ěris m see below
m. masseter

mastoideus, a, um mastoid
mater, tris f mater (cerebral coat)
maxilla, ae f maxilla, upper jaw
meātus, us m meatus (passage)
medulla, ae f medulla
membrum, i n limb
mesencephalicus, a, um
mesencephalic
mesencephalon, i n mesencephalon
mesocolon, i n mesocolon
metacarpalis, e metacarpal
metatarsus, i m metatarsus
minor, us minor, lesser, smaller
minimus, a, um the least, minimus
molāris, e (dens) molar (tooth)
muscularis, e muscular
musculus, i m muscle
m. adductor, oris m adductor
(bringing muscle)
m. arrector, oris m arrector
(muscle elevating hair)
m. levator, oris m levator
(elevating muscle)
m. masseter, eris m masseter
m. pronator, oris m pronator
(muscle turning the forearm)
m. rotator, oris m rotator
m. sphincter, eris m sphincter
(compressing muscle)
m. tensor, oris m tensor
(straining muscle)

N

nasalis, e nasal
nasus, i m nose
nervus, i m nerve
nucleus, i m nucleus
nomen, inis n name

O

oblongatus, a, um rather long
occipitalis, e occipital

oculus, i m eye
operatio, onis f operation
orbita, ae f orbit
organon, i n organ
os, oris n mouth
os, ossis n bone
osseus, a, um bony
ossiculum, i n ossicle
ostium, i n opening, orifice
oticus, a, um otic

P

palatinus, a, um palatine
palatum, i n palate
palpebra, ae f eyelid
pancreaticus, a, um pancreatic
parapharyngealis, e parapharyngeal
paraventriculohypophysialis, e
paraventriculohypophysial
paravesicalis, e paravesical
paries, etis m wall
parotideus, a, um parotid
pars, partis f part
partus, us m childbirth, delivery
parvus, a, um little, small
pecten, inis m pecten (crest)
pelvicus, a, um pelvic
pelvis, is f pelvis
per (Acc.) 1) through, via;
2) by (means of)
periventricularis, e periventricular
permanens, entis (dens) permanent
(tooth)
pes, pedis m foot
petrosus, a, um stony
phalanx, ngis f phalanx
pius, a, um (mater) pia (mater)
pilus, i m hair
planta, ae f sole
plexus, us m plexus (network,
chiefly of veins or nerves)
plica, ae f fold

porta, ae f porta (gate of the liver)

post (Acc.) after (time),
behind (place)

posterior, ius posterior

premolāris, e (dens) premolar
(tooth)

preoccipitālis, e preoccipital

pro (Abl.) for

processus, us m process

profundus, a, um deep

proprius, a, um proper

pubes, is f pubis

pulmo, ōnis m lung

pulmonālis, e pulmonary

pulsus, us m pulse

pupilla, ae f pupil

pyrāmis, ĩdis f pyramid

Q

quadrātus, a, um square, quadrate
(muscle), quadratus (pronator)

R

radix, ĩcis f radix, root

ramus, i m branch

recessus, us m recess

rectum, i n rectum

regio, ōnis f region

ren, renis m kidney

renālis, e renal

respiratorius, a, um respiratory

rete, is n 1) rete (mirabile);
2) network (dorsal venous of hand)

retromandibulāris, e
retromandibular

retropharyngēus, a, um
retropharyngeal

rima, ae f fissure, opening

ruber, bra, brum red

S

sacrālis, e sacral

sanguis, ĩnis m blood

saphēnus, a, um saphenous

sapiens, ntis intelligent, clever

sapientia, ae f wisdom

scapŭla, ae f scapula, shoulder blade

sectio, ōnis f section

segmentum, i n segment

semicirculāris, e semicircular

semilunāris, e semilunar

septum, i n septum, dividing wall

seu or

simplex, ĩcis simple

sine (Abl.) without

sinister, tra, trum left

sinus, us m sinus, hollow curvature
or cavity

situs, us m site

spatium, i n space

spina, ae f spine

spinālis, e spina

splanchnĭcus, a, um splanchnic

squama, ae f squamous part, scales

sternum, i n sternum, breastbone

structŭra, ae f structure

**sub (Acc., when answering
the question “where to?”,
Russian “куда?”; Abl.,
when answering the question
“where?”, Russian “где?”)** under
sublinguālis e sublingual (except
for nerve and bone)

submandibulāris, e submandibular

submucōsus, a, um submucous

substantia, ae f substance

sulcus, i m sulcus, furrow or groove

super, supra (Acc.) above, over

superficiālis, e superficial

superior, ius superior

supraorbital supraorbitālis, e

suprapleurālis, e suprapleural

suprarenālis, e suprarenal
suprēmus, a, um supreme,
the highest

sutūra, ae f suture

symphŷsis, is f symphysis

synchondrōsis, is f synchondrosis

syndesmōsis, is f syndesmosis

systema, ātis n system

T

temporālis, e temporal

teres, ětis round (except for foramen)

terminatio, ōnis f ending

termīnus, i m term

textus, us m tissue

thoracīcus, a, um thoracic

thorax, ācis m thorax, chest

thyr(e)oideus, a, um thyroid

tractus, us m tract

tragus, i m tragus

transverses, a, um transverse

trigōnum, i n trigone

tuber, ěris n tuber, large rounded
swelling

tubercŭlum, i n tubercle,
small rounded swelling

tuberositas, ātis f tuberosity

tumor, ōris m tumor
(swelling, growth)

tunīca, ae f 1) layer, coat;
2) membrane

tympanīcus, a, um tympanic

U

unguis, is m nail

utĕrus, i m uterus

V

vagīna, ae f (of muscle) vagina,
sheath

vas, vasis n vessel

vena, ae f vein

venōsus, a, um venous

venter, tris m belly (of the muscle)

vermiformis, e vermiform

vertĕbra, ae f vertebra

vertebrālis, e vertebral

vesīca, ae f bladder

vestibulāris, e vestibular

vestibŭlum, i n vestibule

vir, i m man

viscus, ěris n; usually Plur. viscĕra,
um n viscera, inner organs

vita, ae f life

vomer, ěris m vomer

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abdomen abdōmen, ĩnis n
abdominal abdominālis, e
about de (Abl.)
above super, supra (Acc.)
accessory accessorius, a, um
adductor (musculŭs) adductor, ōris m
after post (Acc.)
among (more than two objects) inter (Acc.)
anesthesia anaesthesia, ae f
angle angŭlus, i m
anterior anterior, ius
aorta aorta, ae f
apex, top apex, ĩcis m
arch arcus, us m
around circum (Acc.)
artery arteria, ae f
articular articulāris, e
ascending ascendens, ntis
auricular auricularis, e
atlas atlas, antis m
auditory auditorius, a, um

B

back dorsum, i n
base basis, is f
before ante (Acc.)
behind post (Acc.)
between (two objects) inter (Acc.)
blood sanguis, ĩnis m
body corpus, ōris n
bone os, ossis n
bony osseus, a, um
border margo, ĩnis m
brachial brachiālis, e
brain cerēbrum, i n
branch ramus, i m
breast mamma, ae f
broadest latissĭmus, a, um

bronchial bronchiālis, e
bursa (pouch, sac) bursa, ae f
by (means of) per (Acc.)

C

canal canālis, is m
cancer, cri m cancer
canine (tooth) canĭnus, a, um (dens)
cardiac cardiācus, a, um
carotid carotĭcus, a, um
cartilage cartilāgo, ĩnis f
cava, cauae cavus, a, um
cavity cavĭtas, ātis f
cell cellŭla, ae f
central centrālis, e
cerebellum cerebellum, I n
cervical cervicālis, e
cervix cervix, ĩcis f
chiasm chiasma, ātis n
childbirth partus, us m
ciliary ciliāris, e
coccegeal coccygēus, a, um
colon colon, i n
column columna, ae f
common commŭnis, e
complex composĭtus, a, um
conjoint conjunctĭvus, a, um
constrictor (compressing muscle) musculŭs constrictor, ōris m
continued continuus, a, um
cord fascicŭlus, i m
costal costālis, e
cough tussis, is f
cranial craniālis, e
crest crista, ae f
crus crus, cruris n
culmen culmen, ĩnis n
curvature curvatŭra, ae f
cusp valvŭla, ae f

D

death mors, mortis f
deep profundus, a, um
dental dentālis, e
depressor (lowing muscle) musculus depressor, ōris m
diaphragm diaphragma, ātis n
digitus, digiti digītus, i m
distal distālis, e
dividing divīdens, entis
division divisio, ōnis f
dorsal dorsālis, e
duct ductus, us m
during ad (Acc.)

E

ear auris, is f
endocrine endocrīnus, a, um
epigastric epigastrīcus, a, um
ethmoidal ethmoidālis, e
extensor (unbending muscle) musculus extensor, ōris m
external externus, a, um
eyebrow supercilium, i n
eyelash cilium, i n

F

face facies, ēi f
false falsus, a, um
falx falx, falcis f
fascia fascia, ae f
fauces fauces, ium f (plur.)
fever febris, is f
fibrous fibrōsus, a, um
fibular (=peroneal) fibulāris (=peronēus, a, um)
fissure fissūra, ae f
flexor (bending muscle) musculus flexor, ōris m
floating fluctuans, ntis
fold plica, ae f
foot pes, pedis m

for ad (Acc.), pro (Abl.)
forāmen, īnis n opening
forearm antebrachium, i n
forest silvestris, e
forehead sincīput, ītis n
fornix fornix, īcis m
forth quartus, a, um
fossa fossa, ae f
free liber, ěra, ěrum
from a, ab(Abl.); e, ex (Abl)
frontal frontālis, e

G

gallbladder vesīca fellea (=vesīca biliāris)
ganglion, a cluster of nervous cells ganglion, i n
gastric gastrīcus, a, um
general generālis, e
girdle cingūlum, i n
gland glandūla, ae f
gluteal glutēus, a, um
great magnus, a, um
greater major, jus
groove sulcus, i m

H

hallux hallux, ūcis m
hand manus, us f
head caput, ītis n
heart cor, cordis n
hepatic hepatīcus, a, um
highest suprēmus, a, um
horn cornu, us n
hyoid hyoideus, a, um

I

ima imus, a, um
impar impar, āris
in in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”; Abl.,

when answering the question
“where?”)

incisive incisīvus, a, um
incisor incisīvus, a um
incus incus, ūdis f
index (index finger) index, ĭcis m
inferior inferior, ius
in front of ante (Acc.)
inguinal inguinalis, e
inner internus, a, um
inside intra (Acc.)
intelligent sapiens, entis
interclavicular interclaviculāris, e
intercostal intercostālis, e
interlobar interlobāris, e
intermandibular intermandibulāris, e
internal internus, a, um
interosseal interosseus, a, um
interosseous interosseus, a, um
into in (Acc., when answering
the question “where to?”)
intraglandular intraglandulāris, e
iris iris, ĭdis f

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f
jugular jugulāris, e

K

kidney ren, renis m
knee genu, us n

L

lacrimal lacrimālis, e
lactiferous lactifērus, a, um
large magnus, a, um
larynx larynx, ngis m
lateral laterālis, e
latissimus latissĭmus, a um
left sinister, tra, trum
leg pes, pedis m
lesser minor, us

ligament ligamentum, i n
limb membrum, i n
line linea, ae f
lingual linguālis, e
lip labium, i n
liver hepar, ātis n
local locālis, e
long longus, a, um
longest longissĭmus, a, um
longitudinal longitudinālis, e
lower inferior, ius
lower jaw, mandible mandibŭla, ae f
lung pulmo, ōnis m
lymphatic lymphatĭcus, a, um

M

magnus, magnum magnus, a, um
major major, jus
man homo, ĩnis m
mandible mandibŭla, ae f
margin margo, ĩnis m
mastoid mastoideus, a, um
meatus meātus, us m
medial mediālis, e
medicine medicamentum, i n
membrane membrāna, ae f
membranous membranaceus, a, um
middle medius, a, um
minimus minĭmus, a, um
minor minor, us
mirabile mirabĭlis, e
mobile mobĭlis, e
molar molāris, e
molar tooth dens molaris
mouth os, oris n
muscular musculāris, e
muscle muscŭlus, i m

N

nail unguis, is m
nasal nasālis, e
neck cervix, ĭcis f

nerve nervus, i m
nerve node ganglion, i n
nervous nervōsus, a, um
network rete, is n
node nodus, i m
nodule nodūlus, i n
nose nasus, i m
notch incisūra, ae f
nuchal nuchālis, e
nucleus nucleus, i m

O

occipital occipitālis, e
occiput occīput, ĩtis n
on in (Acc. to the question
“where to?”, Abl. to the question
“where?”)
opening forāmen, ĩnis n
operation operatio, ōnis f
optic optĭcus, a, um
ossicle ossicūlum, i n
oval ovālis, e

P

palate palātum, i n
palatine palatīnus, a, um
palatini (veli) palatīnus, a, um
pancreas pancreas, ātis n
pancreatis pancreas, ātis n
parapharyngeal parapharyngeālis, e
paravesical paravesicālis, e
parenchyma parenchĭma, ātis n
parietal parietālis, e
part pars, partis f
pectoral pectorālis, e
pelvis pelvis, is f
pelvic pelvĭcus, a, um
permanent permānens, ntis
peroneal peronēus, a, um
petrosal petrōsus, a, um
phalanx phalanx, ngis f
pharynx pharynx, ngis m

plane planum, i n
plant planta, ae f
plexus plexus, us m
pollex, pollicis (thumb) pollex,
ĭcis m
posterior posterior, ius
preoccipital preoccipitālis, e
process processus, us m
prominent promĭnens, ntis
proper proprius, a, um
pterygoid pterygoideus, a, um
pulvinar pulvĭnar, āris n
pyramide pyrāmis, ĩdis f

R

radix radix, ĭcis f
rectum rectum, i n
region regio, ōnis f
renal renālis, e
respiratory respiratorius, a, um
rete rete, is n
retina retĭna, ae f
rhomboid rhomboideus, a, um
rib costa, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum
ring-shaped (=anular) anulāris, e
root, radix radix, ĭcis f
rotator (rotating muscle) musculus
rotātor, ōris m
round see around

S

sacral sacrālis, e
salivary salivarius, a, um
saphenous saphēnus, a, um
segment segmentum, i n
semilunar semilunāris, e
septum septum, i n
short brevis, e
sinus sinus, us m
simple simplex, ĭcis
skin cutis, is f

skull cranium, i n
small parvus, a, um
smaller minor, us
soft mollis, e
sole planta, ae f
space spatium, i n
sphenoidal sphenoidālis, e
splanchnic splanchnīcus, a, um
spleen lien, ēnis m
spur calcar, āris n
squamous squamōsus, a, um
sternal sternālis, e
sternum **sternum**, i n
stomach gaster, tris f
stony petrōsus, a, um
stroma stroma, ātis n
sublingual sublinguālis, e
submandibular submandibulāris, e
superficial superficiālis, e
superior, upper superior, ius
supraorbital supraorbitālis, e
suprapleural suprapleurālis, e
surface facies, ēi f
suture sutūra, ae f
system systēma, ātis n

T

tail cauda, ae f
tegmen tegmen, īnis n
temporal temporālis, e
tendon tendo, īnis m
tensor (straining muscle) musculus
tensor, ōris m
term termīnus, i m
thalamus thalāmus, i m
thigh femur, ōris n
third tertius, a, um
thoracic thoracīcus, a, um
thorax **thorax**, ācis m
through per (Acc.)
thyroid thyr(e)oideus, a, um
tissue textus, us m

to ad (Acc.)
tongue lingua, ae f
tooth dens, dentis m
top apex, ĩcis m
transverse transversus, a, um
tree arbor, ōris f
trochanter trochanter, ēris m
true verus, a, um
trunk truncus, i m
tympanic tympanīcus, a, um

U

under infra (Acc.); sub (Acc. to
the question “where to?”, Abl. to
the question “where?”)
upper superior, ius
upper jaw, maxilla maxilla, ae f
ureter urēter, ēris m
use usus, us m

V

vein vena, ae f
velum (curtain) velum, i n
vena (vein) vena, ae f
venae see vena
venous venōsus, a, um
ventricle vertricūlus, i m
vertebra vertēbra, ae f
vertebral vertebrālis, e
vessel vas, vasis n
vomer vomer, ěris m

W

wall paries, ětis m
wandering migrans, ntis
wisdom sapientia, ae f

Z

zygomatic zygomatīcus, a, um

Part III PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 14 INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

§ 71. GENERAL INFORMATION ON LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

The words pharmacist, pharmaceutical, pharmacy etc. originate from the ancient Greek word *pharmacōn*, *i. e.* drug, medicine. Historically, the names of drugs and their component parts as well as the names of drug forms and some other pharmaceutical terms, particularly in medical prescriptions, are given in Latin. Nowadays, the use of Latin in the pharmaceutical practice of every country depends on its national tradition and other factors. Namely, the tradition of using Latin both in drug names and medical prescriptions exists in Russia, the Republic of Belarus, the Ukraine and some other European countries.

To Latin pharmaceutical terms belong:

1. Names of drugs: *Amidopyrīnum* (amidopyrin), *Corvalōlum* (corvalol), *Streptocīdum* (streptocide).
2. Names of medical plants: *Belladonna* (belladonna), *Digitālis* (foxglove), *Quercus* (oak).
3. Names of chemical elements: *Kalium* (potassium), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Sulfur* (sulphur).
4. Adjectives: *Mentha piperīta* (pepper mint), *Species antiasthmaticae* (antiasthmatic species), *Suppositoria vaginalia* (vaginal suppositories).
5. Names of drug forms: *Unguentum Tetracyclīni* (ointment of tetracycline), *Tabulettae Myelosāni* (tablets of myelosan), *Tinctūra Menthae* (tincture of mint).
6. Names of the parts of medical plants: *Tinctūra radīcis Valeriānae* (tincture of valerian root), *Herba Valeriānae* (herb of valerian), *Flores Chamomillae* (flowers of matricary).
7. Supplementary nouns and adjectives (mainly in medical prescriptions): *dosis* (dose), *numērus* (number), *talis* (such).

Now let us systematize the use of capital and small letters in Latin pharmaceutical terms.

The capital letter is used:

- 1) In the names of drugs: *Codeīnum* (codeine), *Furacilīnum* (furacilin), *Validōlum* (validol).
- 2) In the names of medical plants: *Calendūla* (calendula), *Eucalyptus* (eucalyptus), *Frangūla* (buckhorn).
- 3) In the names of chemical elements: *Ferrum* (iron), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Zincum* (zinc).

Attention! Nouns of these three groups are written with capital letter in the dictionary form too: Codeīnum, i n; Calendūla, ae f; Ferrum, i n.

4) As the first letter of a name of the drug form, if this name is the first in a multiword term: Linimentum Streptocīdi (liniment of streptocide), Species antiasthmaticae (antiasthmatic species), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian).

5) As the first letter of a name of the plant component, if this name is the first in a multiword term: Herba Valeriānae (herb of valerian), Flores Chamomillae (flowers of matricary), Folia Menthae piperītae (mint pepper leaves).

The small letter is used:

1. In adjectives both in the structure of a term and in the dictionary form: Mentha **piperīta** (piper mint) — piperītus, a, um;

Acīdum **acetylsalicylicum** (acetylsalicylic acid) — acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

2. In drug form names or plant component names being not the first in the term structure as well as in the dictionary form of these names:

Acīdum acetylsalicylicum in **tabulettis** (acetylsalicylic acid in tablets) — tabuletta, ae f; acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

Decoctum **corticis** Quercus (decoction of oak bark) — cortex, icis m; decoctum, i n.

3. If a drug form name or a plant component name is used without drug names:

unguenta et linimenta (ointments and liniments); solutio ad usum externum (solution for external use); pulvėres composīti (compound powders); folia et flores (leaves and flowers); radix et rhizōma (root and rhizome)

4. In constructions with a preposition indicating prescription, order of drug use or way of storage:

Solutio Furacilīni ad **usum externum** (solution of furacilin for external use); Tabulettae contra **tussim** (tablets for cough); Thea medicinālis pro **infantibus** (medicinal tea for children); Mixtio pro **inhalationibus** in **vitro nigro** (mixture for inhalation in dark phial)

Some other peculiarities of using capital or small letter in pharmaceutical terms will be further described in the subsequent parts of this textbook.

§ 72. THE DRUG FORM NAMES

Every drug is produced in a physical form most adequate for use. Traditionally, three main forms are used: solid, semisolid and liquid.

Solid forms:

Dragées (dragée, a French word which is used without latinization in plural and has no Latin dictionary form) — drops

Granūla (**granulum, i n**) — granules of different form containing drug substances

Pilūlae (**pilūla, ae f**) — pills, small balls with a drug substance

Pulvĕres (**pulvis, ĕris m**) — powders

Species (**species, ĕrum f**, only Plural form) — species, mixture of different parts of medicinal plants

Tabulettae (**tabuletta, ae f**) — tablets

Theae (**thea, ae f**) — teas

Semisolid forms

Emplastra (**emplastrum, i n**) — plasters

Pastae (**pasta, ae f**) — pastes, thick ointments

Suppositoria (**suppositorium, i n**) — suppositories

Unguenta (**unguentum, i n**) — ointments

Liquid forms

Decocta (**decoctum, i n**) — decoctions

Emulsa (**emulsum, i n**) — emulsions

Extracta (**extractum, i n**) — extracts

Guttae (**gutta, ae f**) — drops (of liquids)

Infŭsa (**infŭsum, i n**) — infusions

Linimenta (**linimentum, i n**) — liniments

Mixtŭrae (**mixtŭra, ae f**) — mixtures

Mucilagĭnes (**mucilāgo, ĩnis f**) — mucilages, liquids containing mucous substances

Olea (**oleum, i n**) — oils

Sirŭpi (**sirŭpus, i m**) — syrups

Solutiōnes (**solutio, ōnis f**) — solutions

Tinctŭrae (**tinctŭra, ae f**) — tinctures

Some other drug forms

Aĕrosŏla (**aĕrosŏlum, i n**) — aerosols

Capsŭlae (**capsŭla, ae f**) — capsules

Lamellae (=Membranŭlae) ophthalmĭcae (**lamella, ae f; membranŭla, ae f**) — ophthalmic films with drug

§ 73. COMPONENTS OF MEDICAL PLANTS

cortex, ĩcis m — cortex, bark

flos, floris m — flower

folium, i n — leaf

fructus, us m — fruit

herba, ae f — herb

radix, ĩcis f — root

rhizŏma, ātis n — rhizome

semen, ĩnis n — seed

§ 74. MEDICINAL PLANTS IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

Medicinal plant names are mostly nouns of the 1st declension:

Chamomilla, ae f — matricary

Frangŭla, ae f — buckhorn

Some names are nouns of the 2nd declension:

Leonŭrus, i m — motherwort

Millefolium, i n — milfoil

Less numerous are nouns of the 3rd declension:

Digitālis, is f — foxglove

Adonis, īdis m, f — Adonis

Very rarely nouns of the 4th declension are used: Quercus, us f — oak

One should remember that names of trees are always feminine:

Eucalyptus, i f — eucalypt

Quercus, us f — oak

Some plant names consist of a noun and an adjective:

Mentha piperīta — pepper mint

Adonis vernālis — spring Adonis

Medical plant names are used:

1. In the names of liquid drug forms: Tinctūra Valeriānae — tincture of valerian; Decoctum corticis Quercus — decoction of oak bark.

2. In the labels of different packages containing the components of medical plants:

Folia Urtīcae — leaves of nettle; Semen Lini — seed of flax

3. As a component of the medical prescription:

Recīpe: Extracti Aloës fluīdi 1 ml — Take: Liquid extract of aloe 1 ml

Recīpe : Corticis Crataegi 30,0 — Take: Cortex of hawthorn 30,0

As we see, the name of a plant component is always placed before a plant name.

§ 75. THE MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE OF ONE-WORD LATIN DRUG NAMES

One- word drug names usually consist of a noun root, a suffix (**-īn-** is the most common, then follow suffixes **-ōl-** and **-īd-**), and, finally, the most common ending — **um**:

Codeīnum — codeine; Dibazōlum — dibazol; Saluzīdum — saluzid

In drug names specific Greek and Latin noun roots expressing certain pharmaceutical information are widely used. The knowledge of these most common morphological elements enables to write correctly complicated drug names, which is one of the main tasks of learning the pharmaceutical part of our subject. Let us memorize the first part of these morphological elements:

Morphological root	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
-cyclin-	antibiotics-tetracycline	Tetracyclīnum	tetracycline
-cyclo-	making an effect on the metabolic processes	Cycloserīnum	cycloserin
-menth-	product including mint	Menthōlum	menthol
-mycīn-	antibiotics-streptomycin	Monomycīnum	monomycin
-myco-	antimycotic, against fungi	Mycoseptīnum	mycoseptin
-pyr-	influence on the body temperature	Antipyriūnum	antipyrin
-strept-	different pharmaceutical effects	Streptocīdum	streptocide

You should memorize prefixes of Greek origin used to construct a drug name:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
a-, an- (before a vowel)	denying, removing	Apressīnum Analgīnum	apressin analgin
anti-	acting against	antiasthmaticus	antiasthmatic
hyper-	increase, elevation	Hyperōlum	hyperol
hypo-	decrease, lowering	Hypothiazīdum	hypothiazid

§ 76. SOME RULES OF BUILDING MULTIWORD PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

Every multiword Latin pharmaceutical term begins, as a rule, with a drug form name. Then, the drug name follows. If the drug form has an adjective, this adjective is the last in the term:

Extractum Crataegi fluīdum — liquid extract of hawthorn

Tabulettae Tetracyclīni obductae — coated tablets of tetracycline

Sometimes, the drug name is used without a form name, particularly if the prescription or way of storage is indicated:

Aether pro narcōsi — ether for narcosis

Cycloserīnum in capsūlis — cycloserin in capsules

Somatotropīnum humānum pro injectionībus — human somatotropin for injections

Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis — thyreoidin in tablets

Latin names of drugs with compound composition can be enclosed into quotation marks or inverted commas. But English equivalents of these names are used without quotation marks or inverted commas, compare:

Aërosolum “Camphomenum” — aerosol of camphomen

Suppositoria “Anaesthesolum” — suppositories of anaesthesol

In the vocabulary you can find indication with which nouns these specific signs are used.

§ 77. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate it into English:

Extractum Leonūri fluīdum; Linimentum Aloës; Rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae; Sirūpus ex fructībus Rosae; Solutio “Testosterōnum” pro injectionībus; Suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; Tabulettae Aspirīni obductae; Tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; Unguentum Dibiomycīni ophthalmīcum

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

antiasthmatic species; coated tablets of tetracycline; decoction of oak bark; tincture of pepper mint; dry extract of belladonna; ether for narcosis; herb of spring Adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; mint pepper leaves; ointment of mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and

rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricary flowers

§ 78. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 14

Latin-English vocabulary

Aloë, ës f — aloe
Aspirīnum, i n — aspirin
cum (Abl.) — with
Dibiomycīnum, i n — dibiomycine
ex (Abl.) — of
Eucalyptus, i f — eucalypt
extractum, i n — extract
fluīdus, a um — liquid
folium, i n — leaf
fructus, us m — fruit
injectio, ōnis f — injection
Leonūrus, i m — motherwort
linimentum, i n — liniment
obductus, a, um — coated
ophthalmīcus, a, um — ophthalmic
radix, ĩcis f — root
rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome
sirūpus, i m — syrup
suppositorium, i n — suppository
Synthomycīnum, i n — synthomycin
tabuleta, ae f — tablet
tinctūra, ae f — tincture
Testosterōnum, i n — testosterone
unguentum, i n — ointment
vaginālis, e — vaginal

English-Latin vocabulary

Adonis — Adōnis, ĩdis m, f
antiasthmātic — antiasthmāticus, a, um
antipyrin — Antipyrīnum, i n
bark — cortex, ĩcis m
belladonna — Belladonna, ae f
children — infantes, ium m, f
coated — obductus, a, um
compound — composītus, a, um
decoction — decoctum, i n
dry — siccus, a, um

ether — aether, ěris m
 extract — extractum, i, n
 flower — flos, floris m
 for — pro (+Abl.)
 foxglove— Digitālis, is f
 hawthorn — Cratāegus, i f
 herb — herba, ae f
 leaf — folium, i n
 liquid — fluīdus, a, um
 matricary — Chamomilla, ae f
 medicinal — medicinālis, e
 mint — Mentha, ae f
 narcosis— narcōsis, is f
 oak — Quercus, us f
 ointment — unguentun, i n
 pepper — piperītus, a, um
 powder — pulvis, ěris m
 rhizome — rhizōma, ātis n
 root — radix, ĩcis f
 simple— simplex, ĩcis
 species — species, ěrum f (only plur.)
 spring — vernālis, e
 tablet — tabuleta, ae f
 tea — thea, ae f
 tetracycline — Tetracyclīnum, i n
 valerian — Valeriāna, ae f

Lesson 15

LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD VERB FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES OF MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION

§ 79. CURRENT USE OF LATIN IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The use of Latin medical prescription nowadays is still common in many states of Europe, particularly in the countries of the former USSR including the Republic of Belarus and the Russian Federation. That is why the rules of proper use of Latin in medical prescriptions are obligatory in medical university syllabus of these states. Latin inscriptions are written on the labels of drug packing, reference books, and in medical prescriptions.

§ 80. THE IMPERATIVE VERB FORMS USED IN A SIMPLE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Latin part of a medical prescription begins with the Imperative form *Reciĉe: Take:*. This word is addressed to a pharmacist who has to prepare and to hand over a drug to a person.

If the drug is produced by a pharmaceutical plant then the prescription includes the name of this drug which is written after *Reciĉe:*

Reciĉe: Unguenti Tetracyclini ophthalmici 10, 0

Take: Ointment of ophthalmic tetracycline 10, 0

Reciĉe: Extracti Crataegi fluĉdi 25 ml

Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml

After that in a new line two standard Imperative verb forms follow: *Da.* (Give) and *Signa* (Write on the label) so that the full prescription gets the following forms:

Reciĉe: Unguenti Tetracyclĉni 10

Da. Signa:

Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10, 0

Give. Write on the label:

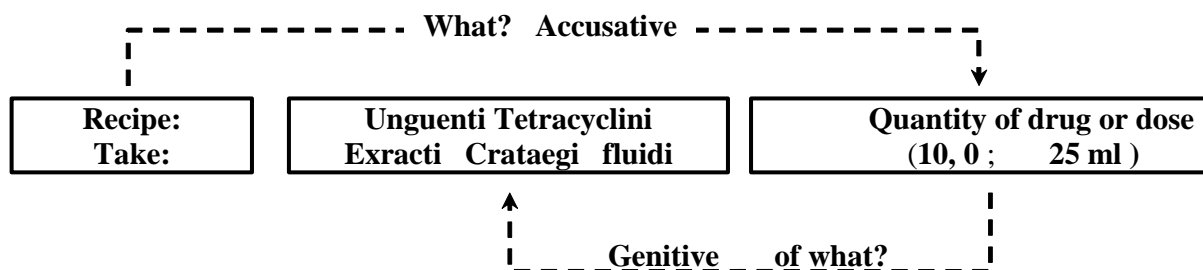
Reciĉe: Extracti Crataegi fluĉdi 25 m

Da. Signa:

Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml

Give. Write on the label:

One should pay attention to the fact that both the drug form and the drug name after *Reciĉe* are in the Genitive form. This case form depends on the quantity of the drug administered mainly in gram amounts (indicated in decimal points without the abbreviation gr.) and milliliter amounts with the abbreviation ml:



After the standard expression *Signa* — Write on the label — goes the signature where the physician indicates the way of using the drug in the patient's native language.

So — from *Reciĉe* to *Signa* — that is how the Latin part of a simple prescription, when the drug is kept in a drugstore in the prepared form, is written.

§ 81. THE CONJUNCTIVE FORMS IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Imperative verb forms can be substituted (with some exception) for the Conjunctive mode forms. These Conjunctive forms are translated into English with the word combination “let it be” + Participle II:

Imperative form	English equivalent	Conjunctive form	English equivalent
Adde	Add	Addātur	Let it be added
Da	Give	Detur Dentur tales doses	Let it be given Let it be given of such doses
Misce	Mix	Misceātur	Let it be mixed
Repēte	Repeat	Repetātur	Let it be repeated
Signa	Write on the label	Signētur	Let it be labelled
Sterilisa!	Sterilize!	Sterilisētur!	Let it be sterilized!

One should remember that the Imperative form *Recīpe* can never be replaced by the Conjunctive one.

The use of the Imperative or Conjunctive forms depends only on the physician writing a medical prescription. As to students, they are to be able to write correctly the grammar form of an order or an instruction according to the initial Latin or English verb form.

§ 82. THE STRUCTURE OF A COMPLEX MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

Sometimes the physician asks the pharmacist to prepare a drug in the pharmacy. In this case, he writes down all the components of this drug. Such a prescription is called a complex one. Naturally, in such a prescription the physician indicates some components to be mixed: *Misce* — *Mix*. He can also define more precisely for what purpose the mixture is necessary — that is for making some drug form. In this case, two forms are used: **fiat** for the nouns in singular and **fiant** for the nouns in plural:

Misce, fiat pulvis — Mix to make a powder

Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia — Mix to make vaginal suppositories

One should remember that the Imperative form *Misce* is only used in the combination with the forms *fiat* and *fiant*.

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be prepared. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

Da (Dentur) tales doses numēro ... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsūlis etc) — Give (Let be given) in such a dose amount... in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.).

If two or more components are taken in the same amount, the dose is indicated only after the latter one, and the adverb *ana* “of each” is written before this amount:

Recīpe: Corticis Frangūlae Take: Cortex of buckthorn
Foliōrum Urtīcae ana 15, 0 Leaves of nettle of each 15, 0

Now, let us see some complex medical prescriptions with different standard phrases:

Recīpe: Sulfadimezīni	Take: Sulphadimezine
Streptocīdi	Streptocide
Synthomycīni ana 1,0	Synthomycin of each 1,0
Misce, fiat pulvis	Mix to make a powder
Detur Signētur:	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:

Recīpe: Euphyllīni	Take: Euphylline
Butyri Cacao 2,0	Cocoa oil 2,0
Misce, fiat suppositorium	Mix to make a suppository
Da tales doses numēro 6	Give such a dose in the amount 6
Signa:	Write on the label:

§ 83. SOME PECULIARITIES OF QUANTITY EXPRESSION IN A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

Sometimes, the amount of oils or other liquids can be indicated in drops. The number of drops is written in Roman figures. If one drop is indicated, so the Accusative singular form *guttam* is used, if more than one, the Accusative plural form *guttas* is used:

Recīpe: Olei Menthae piperītae guttam I	Take: Mint pepper oil I drop
Recīpe: Olei Eucalypti guttas V	Take: Eucalypt oil V drops

In some cases, the physician doesn't indicate the dosage of a complex prescription component and lets the pharmacist determine the quantity of this component on his own. In this case, the standard expression *quantum satis* — in sufficient amount — is used:

Recīpe: Chinosōli 0,03	Take: Chinosol 0,03
Acīdi borīci 0,3	Boric acid 0,3
Tannini 0,06	Tannin 0,06
Olei Cacao quantum satis, fiat suppositorium vaginale	Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to make a vaginal suppository
Da tales doses numēro 6	Give such a dose in the amount 6
Signa:	Write on the label:

§ 84. SOME IMPORTANT RULES FOR MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

1. Every new line begins with capital letter.
2. Every first letter of the next new line is written strictly under the first letter of the previous one.
3. If the prescription text is to be continued in the next line, the first letter in the next line should begin under the fourth letter of the previous one.
4. Any correction in the prescription text is forbidden.

**§ 85. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS OF PLANT ORIGIN INDICATING ALKALOIDS
AND GLYCOSIDES WITH DIFFERENT PHARMACEUTICAL EFFECTS**

Morphological roots	Latin examples	English equivalents
-anth-	Galanthamīnum, i n Helianthus, i m	galanthamine sunflower
-eph-, -ephedr-, -phedr-	Ephatīnum, i n Ephedrīnum, i n Theophedrīnum, i n	ephatin ephedrin theophedrin
-glyc(y)-	Glycerīnum, i n Corglycōnum, i n Glycyrrhīza, ae f Sed: Glucōsum, i n	glycerin corglycon licorice But: glucose
-phyll-	Euphyllīnum, i n Platyphyllīnum, i n	euphylline platyphylline
-phyt	Phytīnum, i n Phytolysīnum, i n	phytin phytolysin
-stroph-	Strophanthus, i m Strophosānum, i n	strophanthus strophosan
-the(o)-	Theobromīnum, i n Theophyllīnum, i n	theobromine theophylline

§ 86. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:

Capsūlae Phytomenadiōni; Emulsum olei Helianthi; Granūla Glycyrami; Pulvis Phytīni pro infantibus; Solutio Corglycōni in ampullis; Solutio Glucōsi pro injectionibus; Suppositoria cum Euphyllīno; Tabulettae “Theophedrinum”; Theophyllīnum in tabulettis

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:

aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline; sublingual tablets of glycin

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in the medical prescription; translate the texts of medical prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Soluble streptocid 5,0
Solution of glucose 10 % —
100 ml
Mix. Let it be sterilized!
Give.
Write on the label:

2. Take: Theophylline 0,2
Cocoa oil 2,0
Mix to make a rectal
suppository
Give.
Write on the label:

3. Take: Tincture of strophanthus 5 ml
Tincture of lily of the valley
Tincture of valerian of each
10 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
4. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin
1 % — 0,0005
Let it be given in such a dose
amount 20 in capsules
Let it be labelled:
5. Take: Solution of strophanthine
0,05 % — 1 ml
Give in such a dose amount
10 in ampoules
Write on the label:
6. Take: Cortex of althea
Cortex of licorice
Seed of flax of each 10,0
Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5
Mix to make a species
Give. Write on the label:
7. Take: Chloroform
Sunflower oil of each 20 ml
Mix to make a liniment
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
8. Take: Ichthyol 3,0
Vaseline up to 30,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give.
Write on the label:

§ 87. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 15

Latin-English vocabulary

ampulla, ae f — ampoule
capsŭla, ae f — capsule
Corglycōnum, i n — corglycon
Glucōsum, i — glucose
Glycyrāmum, i n — glycyram
granŭlum, i n — granule
emulsum, i n — emulsion
Euphyllīnum, i n — euphylline
Helianthus, i m — sunflower
infans, ntis m, f — child
Phytīnum, i n — phytin
Phytomenadiōnum, i n — phytomenadion
pulvis, ěris m — powder
solutio, ōnis f — solution
tabuletta, ae f — tablet
Theophedrīnum, i n — theophedrin
Thophyllīnum, i n — theophylline

English-Latin vocabulary

aerosol — aërosōlum, i n
althea — Althaea, ae f
ampoule — ampulla, ae f
capsule — capsūla, ae f
chloroform — Chloroformium, i n
cocoa — Cacāo (without a dictionary form)
extract — extractum, i n
ephatin — Ephatīnum, i n
emulsion — emulsum, i n
eucalyptus — Eucalyptus, i f
flax — Linum, i n
glucose — Glucōsum, i n
glyceric — glycerinōsus, a, um
glycin — Glycīnum, i n
ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n
leave — folium, i n
licorice — Glycyrrhīza, ae f
lily of the valley — Convallaria, ae f
liniment — linimentum, i n
nitroglycerin — Nitroglycerīnum, i n
oil — oleum, i n
oily — oleōsus, a, um
pectoral — pectorālis, e
phytomenadion — Phytomenadiōnum, i n
rectal — rectālis, e
seed — semen, ĩnis n
soluble — solubīlis, e
solution — solutio, ōnis f
species — species, ērum f (only plural)
streptocide — Streptocīdum, i n
strophanthine — Strophanthīnum, i n
strophanthus — Strophanthus, i m
sublingual — sublinguālis, e
sunflower — Helianthus, i m
theophylline — Theophyllīnum, i n
up to — ad
vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n

Lesson 16

THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF SOME PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

§ 88. GENERAL INFORMATION ON THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms is used only in a simple medical prescription. This is the way of prescribing tablets, drops, suppositories, ophthalmic films, sponges for different medical purposes, aerosols. The name of these pharmaceutical forms is written in the Accusative singular or plural. The Latin drug name in the Nominative form is sometimes enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks, which are omitted in the English text, where in this case the common construction with preposition “of” is used. The amount of the prescribed drug is hereby not indicated in grams or in milliliters but is expressed by the word “numerus” (number) in the Ablative form (numero) and a common figure. In the second line the standard verb forms are written:

Recipe: Tabulettas “Antistrumīnum” numero 50 Detur. Signetur:	Take: Tablets of antistrumin number 50 Let it be given Let it be labelled:
Recipe: Tabulettas Aloës obductas 0,05 numero 20 Da Signa:	Take: Coated tablets of aloe number 20 Give. Write on the label:

As in English drug names inverted commas or quotation marks are not used, it is impossible when translating to find out which Latin equivalent drug name with these specific signs is to be written. That is why when translating from English into Latin we have to consult the dictionary and to find out whether the drug name is enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks or not. So, if we see in the dictionary: psoriasis (ointment) — Unguentum “Psoriasīnum”; antistrumin (tablets) — Tabulettae “Antistrumīnum”; Benspar (capsules) — Capsulae “Bensparum”, we know, how the Latin drug name is to be written correctly, for example:

Take: Capsules of benspar number 100 — Give. Write on the label:	Recipe: Capsūlas “Benspar” numero 100 Da. Signa:
--	--

Now let us see in detail the use of different pharmaceutical forms in the Accusative.

§ 89. THE PRESCRIPTION OF TABLETS IN THE ACCUSATIVE FORM

The drug prescription in tablets may proceed in three forms.

In the first case after *Reciĕpe* the Accusative singular form *Tabulettam* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and the dose. In the second line of the prescription the instruction *Da* (*Dentur*) *tales doses numĕro...* in *tabulettis* is written and after that the standard verb form *Signa* (*Signetur*) follows:

<i>Reciĕpe: Tabulettam Paracetamoli 0,3</i>	<i>Take: Tablet of paracetamol 0,3</i>
<i>Da tales doses numero 6</i>	<i>Give such a dose in</i>
<i>in tabulettis</i>	<i>the amount 6 in tablets</i>
<i>Signa:</i>	<i>Write on the label:</i>

In the second case after *Reciĕpe* the Accusative plural form *Tabulettas* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and figures indicating the amount of active medical substance of a tablet and, finally, the dosage expressed by the “numero” and a figure:

<i>Reciĕpe: Tabulettas Paracetamōli 0,3</i>	<i>Take: Tablets of paracetamol 0,3</i>
<i>numĕro 6</i>	<i>number 6</i>
<i>Da.</i>	<i>Give</i>
<i>Signa:</i>	<i>Write on the label:</i>

But the same drug can be prescribed in a traditional form indicating the drug quantity, and that is the third way of drug prescribing in the tablet form. In this case after *Reciĕpe* the drug name and its dose follow. In the second line the instruction *Da* (*Dentur*) *tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis* and, finally, the standard form *Signa* (*Signetur*) are written:

<i>Reciĕpe: Paracetamōli 0,3</i>	<i>Take: Paracetamol 0,3</i>
<i>Da tales doses numĕro 6</i>	<i>Give such a dose in the</i>
<i>in tabulettis</i>	<i>amount 6 in tablets</i>
<i>Signa:</i>	<i>Write on the label:</i>

It is absolutely imperative that every physician is to know all the ways of writing out medical prescriptions. But the choice of a prescription form is up to him.

§ 90. THE PRESCRIPTION OF DROPS IN THE ACCUSATIVE FORM

Drops (as the equivalent in Latin pharmaceutical terminology the French word “*dragĕes*” is used) are now prescribed mainly in the plural form. From the grammar point of view, the “*dragĕes*” is considered as Accusative depending on the word *Reciĕpe*, but as a French word, it has no case and dictionary form. The prescription regulations for drops are the following. After the *Reciĕpe* follow the form *Dragĕes*, the drug names in inverted commas (quotation marks) or in the Genitive form and the Ablative case *numero* with a figure indicating the dose:

Recipe: Dragées “Undevitum” numero 3	Take: Drops of undevit
Detur.	number 30
Signetur:	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:

One should add that sometimes, an other order of drops prescription is used. In this case, after Recīpe the singular form Dragée is written with the drug name in the Genitive and a figure indicating the dose. In the second line follows the phrase Da (Dentur tales doses) numero...:

Recīpe: Dragée Diazolini 0,05	Take: Dragée of diazolin 0,05
Da tales doses numero 20	Give such a dose in the amount 20
Signa:	Write on the label:

§ 91. THE PRESCRIPTION OF OPHTHALMIC FILMS

Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances. They are used instead of ophthalmic drops when keeping such a film under the eyelid at night.

The ophthalmic films are usually prescribed with the preposition “cum”. The prescription regulations for the ophthalmic films are the following. The verb Recīpe is followed by the Accusative plural forms lamellas (or membranulas) ophthalmicas, the drug name in the Genitive, the preposition “cum” with the active pharmaceutical component and the form *numĕro* with a figure. In the second and third lines the standard phrases Da (Dentur) tales doses numero ... and Signa (Signetur) are written:

Recīpe: Lamellas ophthalmicas cum Novocaino numero 8
Da. Signa:
Take: Ophthalmic films with Novocain number 8
Give. Write on the label:

§ 92. THE PRESCRIPTION OF MEDICAL SPONGES

A pharmaceutical sponge is a porous substance saturated with a drug. It is applied to the necessary place and has antiseptic, haemostatic and other pharmaceutical effects. Pharmaceutical sponges are usually prescribed in plural form and in two variants.

1. The verb Recīpe is followed by the Accusative plural form Spongias, the drug name in quotation marks (inverted commas) and the “numero” with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases Da (Dentur) and Signa (Signetur):

Recīpe: Spongias “Methuracōlum”	Recīpe: Sponges of meturacol
numĕro 10	number 10
Da	Give
Signa:	Write on the label:

2. Recipe is followed by the Accusative plural forms Spongias and an adjective, the preposition “with”, the drug name and the form “numero” with a figure. After that the standard forms Da (Detur) and Signa (Signetur) follow:

Reĉipe: Spongias antisepticas cum Kanamycino numero 5

Detur. Signetur:

Take: Antiseptic sponges with kanamycin number 5

Let it be given

Let it be labelled:

§ 93. THE PRESCRIPTION OF SUPPOSITORIES IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

A pharmaceutical suppository is a drug in the form of a round or conical tablet which is solid at room temperature and semisolid at body temperature. They distinguish the rectal suppository and the vaginal one. In the Accusative case, suppositories are prescribed as medical sponges:

1. Reĉipe is followed by the Accusative plural form Suppositoria with the adjective vaginalia (rectalia) or without these adjectives, the drug name in inverted commas and the numero with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases Da (Detur) and Signa (Signetur):

Reĉipe: Suppositoria vaginalia “Osarbonum” numero 10

Da. Signa:

Take: Vaginal suppositories of osarbon number 10

Give. Write on the label:

2. Recipe is followed by the Accusative plural form Suppositoria, the preposition “cum” and the active pharmaceutical component in the Ablative, a figure indicating the amount of this component, the form “numero” with a figure. After that the standard forms Da (Detur) and Signa (Signetur) follow in the next lines:

Reĉipe: Suppositoria cum Diprophyllino 0,5 numero 30

Detur. Signetur:

Take: Suppositories with diprophylline 0,5 number 30

Let it be given. Let it be labelled:

§ 94. THE PRESCRIPTION OF AEROSOLS IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

An aerosol contains the drug in a gaseous form which is contained in a small cylinder provided with a valve.

Aerosols are prescribed in the Accusative singular form in two ways:

1. Recipe is followed by the Accusative singular form Aërosolum, its name in inverted commas and the numero with a figure. After that the standard forms Da (Detur) and Signa (Signetur) follow in the next lines:

Recīpe: Aërosolum “Proposōlum”
 numero 2
 Da
 Signa:

Take: Aerosol of proposal
 number 2
 Give.
 Write on the label:

2. Recipe is followed by the Accusative singular form Aërosolum and its name in inverted commas or quotation marks. In the second line, the standard phrase Da (Dentur) tales doses numero is written:

Recīpe: Aërosolum “Proposōlum”
 Da tales doses numero 2
 Signa:

Take: Aerosol of proposal
 Give such a dose in
 the amount 2
 Write on the label:

§ 95. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aesthes-, -aesth- -asthes- -esthes-	correction of sensibility	Anaesthesīnum, i n Aesthocīnum, i n Bellasthesīnum, i n Pavesthesīnum, i n	anaesthesin aesthocin bellasthesin pavesthesin
-cain-	anesthetic effect	Novocāinum, i n Ultracāinum, i n	novocain ultracain
-camph-	influence on the central and peripheral nervous system	Bromcamphōra, ae f Camphōnium, i n	bromcamphora camphonium
-erythr-, -eryth-, -ery-	1) containing erythromycin 2) produced from erythrocytes	Erythromycīnum, i n Eryhaemum, i n Erycyclīnum, i n	erythromycīn eryhaem erycyclin
-haem-	haemostatic or haematopoiesis stimulating effect	haemostatīcus, a, um Haemostimulīnum, i n	haemostatic haemostimulin
-oestr-	female genital hormones	Oestradiōlum, i n Synoestrōlum, i n	oestradiol synoestrol
-test-	male genital hormones	Medrotestrōnum, i n Testosterōnum, i n	medrotestron testosteron
-thym-	immunity stimulators produced from thymus	Thymalīnum, i n Thymoptīnum, i n	thymalin thymoptin
-thyr	correction of thyroid function	Thyroidīnum, i n Rifathyroīnum, i n	thyroidin rifathyroin

§ 96. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Ampullae cum pulvère Rifathyroīni; Granūla Erycyclīni in capsūlis; Injēctiōnes Thymalīni pro adultis; Lamellae ophthalmīcae cum Dicaīno; Pulvis Dicaīni crystallisātus; Solutio Pyromecaīni pro infusionibus intravenōsis;

Spongia haemostatica in vitro vitreo; Suppositoria “Anaesthesolum”; Thyreoidinum in tabulettis

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

anaesthesin for narcosis; camphoric spirit for triturating; eryhaem in vitreous phials; haemostatic plaster of feracryl; oily solution of synoestrol in the ampoules; testoenat for injections; tablets of pregoestrol; solution of thymogen for intranasal introduction

3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions into Latin:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Take: Coated tablets of allochol
for children number 25
Give. Write on the label: | 2. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14
number 12
Give. Write on the label: |
| 3. Take: Thyreoidin 0,05
Let it be given of such a dose
number 50 in tablets
Let it be labelled: | 4. Take: Solution of haemophobin 5 ml
Give such a dose in
the amount 10 in ampoules
Write on the label: |
| 5. Take: Erynit 0,1
Give such a dose in
the amount 20 in tablets
Write on the label: | 6. Take: Ophthalmic films with
neomycin number 8
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 7. Take: Vaginal suppositories with
synthomycin 0,15 number 10
Give. Write on the label: | 8. Take: Aerosol of camphomen
Give such a dose
in the amount 2
Write on the label: |
| 9. Take: Haemostatic collagen sponge
Let it be given of such a dose
number 4 in plastic packets
Let it be labelled: | 10. Take: Anaesthesin 2,5
Cocoa oil in sufficient
amount to make a rectal
suppository
Let it be given of such a
dose number 50 in tablets
Let it be labelled: |

§ 97. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 16

Latin-English vocabulary

adultus, a, um — adult

ampulla, ae f — ampoule

“Anaesthesolum” (Anaesthesolum, i n) — anaesthesol

capsula, ae f — capsule

crystallisatus, a, um — crystal

Dicaīnum, i n — dicain
 Erycyclīnum, i n — erycyclin
 granūlum, i n — granule
 haemostaticus, a um — haemostatic
 infusio, ōnis f — infusion
 intravenōsus, a, um — intravenous
 lamella, ae f — film (ophthalmic)
 Oestradiōlum, i n — oestradiol
 ophthalmicus, a, um — ophthalmic
 Pyromecaīnum, i n — pyromecain
 pulvis, ěris m — powder
 Rifathyroīnum, i n — rifathyroin
 spongia, ae f — sponge
 Thymalīnum, i n — thymalin
 Thyreoidīnum, i n — thyreoidin
 vitrum, i n — phial, glass
 vitreus, a, um — vitreous

English-Latin vocabulary

aerosol — aērosōlum, i n
 ampoule — ampulla, ae f
 anaesthesin — Anaesthesinum, i n
 camphomen — “Camphomēnum” (Camphomēnum, i n)
 camphoric — camphorātus, a, um
 collagen — collagenīcus, a, um
 eryhaem — Eryhaemum, i n
 erynit — Erynitum, i n
 erythromycin — Erythromycīnum, i n
 feracryl — “Feracrylum” (Feracrylum, i n)
 glass — 1) vitrum, i n; 2) vitreus, a, um
 haemophobin — Haemophobīnum, i n
 haemostatic — haemostaticus, a, um
 in sufficient amount — quantum satis
 intranasal — intranasālis, e
 introduction — inductio, ōnis f
 neomycin — Neomycīnum, i n
 oily — oleōsus, a, um
 packet — fascicūlus, i m
 phial — vitrum, i n
 plaster — emplastrum, i n
 plastic — polyaethylenīcus, a, um
 pregoestrol — Praegoestrōlum, i n

sponge — spongia, ae f
 synthomycin — Synthomycīnum, i n
 spirit (alcohol) — spirītus, us m
 synoestrol — Synoestrōlum, i n
 testoenat — Testoenātum, i n
 trituration — trituration, ōnis f
 thymogen — Thymogēnum, i n
 vaginal — vaginālis, e

Lesson 17

LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES

§ 98. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neuter gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n — aluminium

Ferrum, i n — iron

Zincum, i n — zinc

Nouns of two chemical elements are exception from this rule:

Phosphorus, i m — phosphorus

Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur (in American English the spelling is sulfur)

Some elements have double names:

fluorine — Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n

magnesium — Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n

See the chemical element names of most common usage in the table below:

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Al	Aluminium	aluminium
Ag	Argentum	silver
As	Arsenicum	arsenic
Au	Aurum	gold
Ba	Barium	barium
Bi	Bismuthum	bismuth
Br	Bromum	bromine
Ca	Calcium	calcium
C	Carboneum	carbon
Cl	Chlorum	chlorine
Cu	Cuprum	copper
Fe	Ferrum	iron
F	Fluōrum seu Phthorum	fluorine
Hg	Hydrargyrum	mercury
H	Hydrogenium	hydrogen
I	Iōdum	iodine
K	Kalium	potassium

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Li	Lithium	lithium
Mg	Magnium seu Magnesium	magnesium
Mn	Mangānum	manganese
Na	Natrium	sodium
N	Nitrogenium	nitrogen
O	Oxygenium	oxygen
Pb	Plumbum	lead
P	Phosphorus	phosphorus
Si	Silicium	silicon
S	Sulfur	sulphur (sulfur)
Zn	Zincum	zinc

§ 99. LATIN NAMES OF ACIDS

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun *acīdum* (acid) and an adjective of the first group with the ending **-um** in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement. One should, hereby, pay attention, that in the dictionary form, both nouns and adjective are written with a small letter but in the combination with adjectives the noun *acīdum* is written with a capital letter:

acīdum, i n — acid

borīcus, a, um — boric

but: *Acīdum borīcum*

There are three variants of Latin acid names. The first two variants cover the names of acids which include oxygen, the last one — the names of acids without oxygen.

In the first variant, when an acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix **-ic-** and the ending **-um** are added to the stem of a chemical element. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix **-ic** as a final element:

Latin noun of chemical element	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurīcus, a, um	<i>Acīdum sulfurīcum</i> (H ₂ SO ₄)	sulphuric acid

The same way of acid names building is used when names of organic acids are formed:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
lac, lactis n (milk)	lact-	lactīcus, a, um	<i>Acīdum lactīcum</i>	lactic acid

In the second variant when the acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix **-os-** is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending **-ous**:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurōsus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurōsum (H ₂ SO ₃)	sulphurous acid

In the third variant, when an acid doesn't contain oxygen, the prefix **hydro-** and the suffix **-ic-** are added to the stem:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	hydrosulfurīcus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurōsum (H ₂ S)	hydrosulphuric acid

One should remember that in acid names (as well as in salt names) formed from the noun Nitrogenium only a part of the stem is used: **-nitr-**

Acīdum nitrīcum — nitric acid Acīdum nitrōsum — nitrous acid

§ 100. LATIN NAMES OF OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, then the Nominative form oxŷdum (hydroxŷdum, peroxxŷdum) follows:

Zinci oxŷdum — zinc oxide

Alumini hydroxŷdum — aluminium hydroxide

Hydrogenii peroxxŷdum — hydrogen peroxide

The names oxŷdum, hydroxŷdum, peroxxŷdum are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

oxŷdum, i n

hydroxŷdum, i n

peroxŷdum, i n

§ 101. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS REFLECTING CHEMICAL INFORMATION

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-(a)z-, -(a)zid-, -(a)zin-, -(a)zol-, -(a)zon-	presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds	Azaleptīnum, i n Phthivazīdum, i n Sulfapyridazīnum, i n Norsulfazōlum, i n Sibazōnum, i n	azaleptin phthivazid sulfapyridazin norsulfazol sibazon
-benz-	presence of benzene ring	Benzohexonium, i n benzoīcus, a, um	benzohexon benzoic

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-cyan-	cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group	Cyanocobalamīnum, i n cyanīdum, i n	cyanocobalamine cyanide
-hydr-, -hyd-	presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehydum, i n	hydrogen formaldehyde
-naphth-	products of petroleum	Naphthalānum, i n Naphthyzīnum, i n	naphthalan naphthyzin
-oxy-	presence of oxygen and its compounds	Chinoxydīnum, I n Oxylidīnum, i n	chinoxidīn oxylidīn
-phtha(l)-	derivatives of phthalic acid	Phthalazōlum, i n Phthazōlum, i n	phthalazol phthazol
-phthor-	presence of fluorine compounds	Phthorocortum, i n Phthoracizīnum, i n	phthoracizīn phthorocort
-sulf-	presence of sulphur or its derivatives	Norsulfazōlum, i n sulfas, ātis m	norsulfazol sulphate
-thi-	presence of sulphur atom in the names of thiosalts and thioacids	Thiopentālum, i n thiosulfas, ātis m	thiopental thiosulphate
-yl-	presence of carbohydrogenic radicals	Benzylpenicillīnum, i n salicylicus, a, um	benzylpenicillin salicylic

§ 102. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Acīdum arsenicōsum anhydricum; Acīdum ascorbinicum in dragées; Cyanocobalamīnum seu Vitamīnum B₁₂; Emplastrum Plumbi simplex; Emulsum Erythrophosphatīdi in ampullis; Phthalazōlum in tabulettis; Pulvis Magnesii oxȳdi; Sirūpus Aloēs cum Ferro; Sulfacylum solubile pro injectionibus; Suspensio Hydrocortisōni in flaconibus; Tabulettae Acīdi folīci; Tabulettae Acīdi acetylsalicylicī enterosolubīles

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

ascorbic acid in drops; coated tablets of glutaminic acid; clear hydrochloric acid; diluted solution of hydrogen hydroxide; emulsion of castor oil; granules of furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; solution of nicotinic acid; solution of soluthizon for intratracheal injection; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; suspension of aluminium hydroxide; tablets of lipoic acid; thioacetazon in tablets; white powder of sulphadimidine; yellow mercury oxide

3. Give the dictionary form both of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions:

1. Take: Tablets of phthalazol 0,05
number 20
Give. Write on the label:

2. Take: Naphthalan ointment 50,0
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

3. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0
Distilled water up to 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
4. Take: Purified sulphur
Peach oil of each 30,0
Let it be mixed
Let it be sterilized!
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
5. Take: Streptocide
Sulphadimezin
Norsulphazol of each 5,0
Mix to make the finest powder
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
6. Take: Glutaminic acid 1,5
Solution of glucose 25 % —
450 ml
Mix
Give
Write on the label:
7. Take: Menthol 0,1
Zinc oxide
Boric acid of each 0,5
Vaseline 10,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give
Write on the label:
8. Take: Boric acid 5,0
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch of each 25,0
Ointment of naphthalan 45,0
Mix to make a paste
Give.
Write on the label:
9. Take: Ascorbic acid 0,2
Nicotinic acid
Riboflavin of each 0,25
Distilled water up to 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:
10. Take: Yellow hydrogen oxide 0,6
Ichthyol 0,8
Zinc ointment 20,0
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on the label:
11. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,015
Powder of rhubarb root
Magnesium oxide of each 0,3
Mix to make a powder
Give such a dose in the amount 10
Write on the label:
12. Take: Salicylic acid
Lactic acid of each 6,0
Icy acetic acid 3,0
Collodium up to 20,0
Mix
Give
Write on the label:

§ 103. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 17

Latin-English vocabulary

acetylsalicylicus, a, um — acetylsalicylic
acidum, i n — acid

Aloë, ěs f — aloe
 anhydrĭcus, a, um — anhydrous
 arsenicōsus, a, um — arsenous
 ascorbinĭcus, a, um — ascorbic
 Cyanocobalamĭnum, i n — cyanocobalamin
 depurātus, a, um — purified
 dragées — drops
 emplastrum, i n — plaster
 emulsum, i n — emulsion
 enterosolubĭlis, e — enteric soluble
 Erythrophosphatĭdum, i n — erythrophosphatide
 Ferrum, i n — iron
 flaco, ōnis m — phial
 folĭcus, a, um — folic
 Hydrocortisōnum, i n — hydrocortisone
 Magnesium, i n — magnesium
 Naphthalānum, i n — naphthalan
 Norsulfazōlum, i n — norsulphazol
 oxŷdum, i n — oxide
 Phthalazōlum, i n — phthalazol
 Plumbum, i n — lead
 Riboflavĭnum, i n — riboflavin
 Ricĭnus, i m — castor-oil plant
 seu — or
 simplex, ĭcis — simple
 solubĭlis, e — soluble
 Streptocĭdum, i n — streptocide
 Sulfacylum, i n — sulfacyl
 Sulfur, ŷris n — sulphur
 suspensio, ōnis f — suspension
 vitamĭnum, i n — vitamĭn

English-Latin vocabulary

acetic — acetĭcus, a, um
 acid — acĭdum, i n
 aluminium — Aluminium, i n
 ascorbic — ascorbinĭcus, a, um
 boric — borĭcus, a, um
 castor oil — oleum Ricĭni
 castor oil plant — Ricĭnus, i m
 clear — purus, a, um
 coated — obductus, a, um

collodium — Collodium, i n
diluted — dilūtus, a, um
distilled — destillātus, a, um
drops — dragées
emulsion — emulsum, i n
finest — subtilissīmus, a, um
foxglove — Digitālis, is f
furazolidon — Furazolidōnum, i n
glutaminic — glutaminīcus, a, um
hydrochloric — hydrochlorīcus, a, um
hydrogen — Hydrogenium, i n
hydroxide — hydroxŷdum, i n
icy — glaciālis, e
ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n
intratracheal — intratracheālis, e
iodine — Iōdum, i n
lactic — lactīcus, a, um
lipoic — lipoīcus, a, um
mercury — Hydrargŷrum, i n
naphthalan — Naphthalānum, i n
nicotinic — nicotinīcus, a, um
oxide — oxŷdum, i n
paste — pasta, ae f
peach — Persīcum, i n
phthalazol — Phthalazōlum, i n
peach oil — Oleum Persicōrum
rhubarb — Rheum, i n
riboflavin — Riboflavīnum, i n
root — radix, īcis f
salicylic — salicylīcus, a, um
soluthizon — Soluthizōnum, i n
spirituous — spirituōsus, a, um
starch — Amŷlum, i n
sulphadimezin — Sulfadimezīnum, i n
sulphadimidine — Sulfadimidīnum, i n
thioacetazone — Thioacetazonum, i n
vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n
up to — ad
water — aqua, ae f
wheat — Tritīcum, i n
yellow — flavus, a, um

Lesson 18

LATIN NAMES OF SALTS ON THE LABELS OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS

§ 104. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS, WHOSE ANIONS CONTAIN OXYGEN

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation (a chemical element name or, more seldom, a drug name), in the second place is the Nominative of an anion. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we speak of anions derivatives of acids containing oxygen of different degrees, two variants of these anions are distinguished:

1. Names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-as** in the Nominative and **-ātis** in the Genitive singular: Na₂SO₄ — Natrii sulfas → sulfas, ātis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na ₂ SO ₄	Natrii sulfas	sulfas, ātis m	sulphate	sodium sulphate
NaNO ₃	Natrii nitras	nitras, ātis m	nitrate	sodium nitrate

So, one can very easily find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: the English ending **-ate** corresponds to the Latin ending **-as**. In this way we may instantly determine Latin equivalents of English anions without analyzing their chemical composition, including all the anions of organic acids having the ending **-ate** too:

sodium salicylate — Natrii salicylas

testosterone propionate — Testosterōni propionas

2. The names of anions containing lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-is** in the Nominative and **-ītis** in the Genitive singular: Na₂SO₃ — Natrii sulfis → sulfis, ītis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na ₂ SO ₃	Natrii sulfis	sulfis, ītis m	sulphite	sodium sulphite
NaNO ₂	Natrii nitris	nitris, ītis m	nitrite	sodium nitrite

As you can see, the Latin anion ending **-is** corresponds to the English anion ending **-ite**, and it allows, as it is seen above, to determine any necessary equivalent taking as well into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

§ 105. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS WHOSE ANIONS DO NOT CONTAIN OXYGEN

The names of anions which don't contain oxygen are neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix **-id-** and the ending **-um**:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na ₂ S	Natrii sulfidum	sulfidum, i n	sulphide	sodium sulphide
NaCl	Natrii chloridum	chloridum, i n	chloride	sodium chloride

So, the complex ending **-idum** of the Latin anions which don't contain oxygen corresponds to the English ending **-ide** in the anions with the similar chemical compound.

Conclusion: if you remember the endings of the three seen above variants of Latin anions and if you know which Latin anion ending corresponds to the English one, you do not need to know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

§ 106. ANION NAMES OF BASIC SALTS

Latin anion names of basic salts are formed by adding the prefix **sub-**:

Bismūthi subnītras — basic nitrate of bismuth

Aluminii subacētas — basic acetate of aluminium

§ 107. TWO-COMPONENT NAMES OF POTASSIUM AND SODIUM SALTS

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral noun of the second declension. The second component following the hyphen is written with a small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative cases the ending **-i** and the gender sign **n** follow. English equivalents of these terms are written without a hyphen:

Sulfacylum-natrium, i n — sulphacyl sodium

Benzympenicillīnum- kalium, i n — benzylpenicillin potassium

§ 108. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS REFLECTING PHARMACEUTICAL INFORMATION

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aeth-	presence of ethyl group	aethylīcus, a, um Aethynālum, i n	ethylic etynal
-lysin-, -lytin-	removing some destructive factor	Phytolysīnum, i n Broncholytīnum, i n	phytolysin broncholytin
-meth-	presence of methyl group	Methylēnum, i n Methylium, i n	methylen methyl
-morph-	analgetics, derivatives of morphine	Apomorphīnum, i n Morpholongum, i n	apomorphin morpholong
-phen-	presence of phenyl group	Phenōlum, i n Phthorophenazīnum, in	phenol phthorophe- nazin

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-phthi-	antitubercular effect	Phthivazīdum, i n Phthizopyrāmum, i n	ftivazide phthizopyram
-poly-	large number, multitude	polyvitaminōsus, a, um Polyamīnum, i n	multivitaminous polyamin
-thromb-	thrombolytics, against thrombosis	Thrombīnum, i n Thrombocytinim, i n	thrombin thrombocytin

§ 109. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Aether stabilisātus pro narcosi; Barii sulfas pro rentgeno; Cerebrolysīnum in ampullis ad usum parenterālem; Emulsum Benzylī benzoātis medicinālis; Granūla Aethazōli-natrii pro infantibus; Membranūlae ophthalmīcae cum Atropīni sulfāte; Methylēnum coeruleum in capsulis; Phenylī salicylas in tabulettis; Pulvis Phenoxyethylpenicillīni pro suspensiōne; Solutio Aethacridīni lactātis spirituōsa; Species polyvitaminōsae et pectorāles; Tabulettae Calcii orotātis; Theobrominum-natrium cum Natrii salicylāte; Spirītus aethylīcus rectificātus; Vitamīnum B₆ seu Pyridoxini hydrochlorīdum

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

basic acetate of lead; basic nitrate of bismuth with belladonna extract; coated tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride; hypertonic solution of sodium chloride; isotonic solution of sodium chloride; morpholong for intramuscular injections; ointment of copper citrate; ophthalmic films with fibrinolysin; polyethylenoxide for intravenous use; powder of sarcolysin for solution; precipitated calcium carbonate; rectified ethylic spirit; solution of terrilytin for inhalation; suppositories of methyluracil; syrup of broncholytin in phials; tablets of ethylmorphine hydrochloride for adults; tablets of phthivazid

3. Give the dictionary form of both nouns and adjectives; translate the medical prescriptions:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Take: Tincture of spring pheasant's eye herb 180 m
Amidopyrin 2,0
Sodium bromide 4,0
Codeine phosphate 0,2
Mix
Give
Write on the label: | 2. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,001
Basic bismuth nitrate
Phenyl salicylate of each 0,25
Mix to make a powder
Give such a dose in the amount 10
Write on the label: |
|--|---|

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>3. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1
Vaseline 10,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give
Write on the label:</p> | <p>4. Take: Rectified ethyl spirit 95 % —
20 ml
Water for injections 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:</p> |
| <p>5. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0,005
Phenobarbital
Papaverin hydrochloride of each 0,02
Give such a dose in the amount 10
Write on the label:</p> | <p>6. Take: Dimedrol 0,01
Ephedrin hydrochloride 0,1
Peach oil 10 ml
Mint oil I drop
Mix
Give
Write on the label:</p> |
| <p>7. Take: Coated tablets of oleandoandomycin phosphate 0,125 number 25
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:</p> | <p>8. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin sulphate number 10
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:</p> |
| <p>9. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0,015
Apomorphine hydrochloride 0,05
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1 ml
Distilled water up to 2000 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:</p> | <p>10. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0
Potassium carbonate 5,0
Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0
Glycerin in sufficient amount
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on the label:</p> |
| <p>11. Take: Menthol
Ethylmorphine hydrochloride of each 200 ml
Sugar 0,03
Mix to make a powder
Give such a dose in amount 10
Write on the label:</p> | <p>12. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml
Sodium hydrocarbonate
Sodium benzoate of each 5,0
Simple syrup 20,0
Mix
Give
Write on the label:</p> |

§ 110. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 18

Latin-English vocabulary

Aethacridīnum, i n — ethacridine
aethylīcus, a, um — ethyl

aether, ěris m — ether
 Aethazōlum-natrium, i n — ethazol sodium
 Althaea, ae f — althea
 Apomorphinum, i n — apomorphine
 Atropīnum, i n — atropin
 benzoas, ātis m — benzoate
 Benzylum, i n — benzyl
 Calcium, i n — calcium
 Cerebrolysīnum, i n — cerebrolysin
 coeruleus, a, um — blue
 hydrochlorīdum, i n — hydrochloride
 lactas, ātis m — lactate
 medicinālis, e — medical
 Methylēnum, i n — methylen
 orōtas, ātis m — orotate
 parenterālis, e — parenteral
 pectorālis, e — pectoral
 Phenoxyethylpenicillīnum, i n — phenoxyethylpenicillin
 Phenylīnum, i n — phenyl
 polyvitaminōsus, a, um — polyvitaminous
 Pyridoxīnum, i n — pyridoxine
 rentgēnum, i n — roentgenoscopy
 salicylas, ātis m — salicylate
 sulfas, ātis m — sulphate
 Natrium, i n — sodium
 spirituōsus, a, um — spirituous
 spirītus, us m — spirit
 suspensio, ōnis f — suspension
 Theobrominum-natrium, i n — theobromine sodium
 vernālis, e — existing in spring
 vitamīnum, i n — vitamin

English-Latin vocabulary

amidopyrin — Amidopyrīnum, i n
 apomorphine — Apomorphīnum, i n
 basic acetate — subacētas, ātis m
 basic nitrate — subnītras, ātis m
 belladonna — Belladonna, ae f
 benzoate — benzoas, ātis m
 bismuth — Bismūthum, i n
 bromide — bromīdum, i n
 broncholytin — Broncholytīnum, i n

calcium — Calcium, i n
 carbonate — carbōnas, ātis m
 chloride — chlorīdum, i n
 citrate — citras, ātis m
 codeine — Codeīnum, i n
 copper — Cuprum, i n
 diluted — dilūtus, a, um
 dimedrol — Dimedrōlum, i n
 fibrinolysin — Fibrolysīnum, i n
 film — lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f
 glycerin — Glycerīnum, i n
 hydrocarbonate — hydrocarbōnas, atis m
 hydrochloride — hydrochlorīdum, i n
 hypertonic — hypertonīcus, a, um
 inhalation — inhalatio, ōnis f
 intramuscular — intramusculāris, e
 intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um
 isotonic — isotonīcus, a, um
 lead — Plumbum, i n
 magnesium — Magnesium, i n
 menthol — Menthōlum, i n
 morphine — Morphīnum, i n
 neomycin — Neomycīnum, i n
 papaverine — Papaverīnum, i n
 peach — Persīcum, i n
 peach oil — Oleum Persicōrum
 phenobarbital — Phenobarbitālum, i n
 phenyl — Phenylium, i n
 phosphate — phosphas, ātis m
 phthivazid — Phthivazīdum, i n
 platyphylline — Platyphyllīnum, i n
 polyethylenoxide — Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n
 potassium — Kalium, i n
 precipitated — praecipitātus, a, um
 salicylate — salicylas, ātis m
 sarcolysin — Sarcolysīnum, i n
 sodium — Natrium, i n
 spring Adonis (=spring pheasant's eye) — Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (is, e)
 spirit — spirītus, us m
 sugar — Sacchārum, i n
 syrup — sirūpus, i m
 terrilytin — Terrilytīnum, i n

vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n

**§ 111. MODEL (SAMPLE) OF THE FINAL TEST
IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY**

1. *Write down the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents:*

1) mercury; 2) basic acetate; 3) mint; 4) oxide; 5) rhubarb; 6) sugar;
7) sunflower; 8) glucose; 9) peach; 10) chloroform

2. *Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:*

1) decoction of oak bark; 2) powder of foxglove leaves; 3) dry extract of licorice; 4) camphoric spirit for trituration; 5) eryhaem in glass phials; 6) coated tablets of glutaminic acid; 7) emulsion of castor oil; 8) precipitated calcium carbonate

3. *Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives and translate the following prescriptions into Latin:*

1. Take: Ichthyol 3,0
Vaseline up to 30,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give
Write on the label:

2. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0
Distilled water up to 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

3. Take: Ophthalmic films with
neomycin number 8
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

4. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml
Sodium hydrocarbonate
Sodium benzoate of each 5,0
Simple sirup 20,0
Mix. Give.
Write on the label:

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

acetylsalicylicus, a, um

acetylsalicylic

acidum, i n acid

ad (Acc.) for

ad usum externum to be taken
externally (= for external use)

ad usum internum to be taken
internally (= for internal use)

ad usum parenterālem to be taken
parenterally (=for parenteral use)

adultus, a, um adult

Aethacridinum, i n ethacridine

Aethazolum-natrium, i n ethazol
sodium

aether, ěris m ether

aethylicus, a, um ethylic

Aloë, ěs f aloe

Althaea, ae f althea

ampulla, ae f ampoule

Anaesthesolum, i n anaesthesol

anhydricus, a, um anhydrous

Apomorphinum, i n apomorphine

arsenicōsus, a, um arsenous

ascorbinicus, a, um ascorbic

Aspirinum, i n aspirin

Atropinum, i n atropine

B

Barium, i n barium

benzoas, ātis m benzoate

Benzylium, i n benzyl

C

Calcium, i n calcium

capsūla, ae f capsule

Cerebrolysinum, i n cerebrolysin

coeruleus, a, um blue

Corglyconum, i n corglycon

crystallisātus, a, um crystal

cum (Abl.) with

Cyanocobalaminum, i n

cyanocobalamin

D

depurātus, a, um purified

Dibiomycinum, i n dibiomycine

Dicaīnum, i n dicain

dragées drops

E

emplastrum, i n plaster

emulsum, i n emulsion

enterosolubilis, e enteric soluble

Erycyclinum, i n erycycline

Erythrophosphatidum, i n
erythrophosphatide

et and

Eucalyptus, i f eucalypt

Euphyllinum, i n euphylline

ex (Abl.) from, of

extractum, i n extract

F

Ferrum, i n iron

flaco, ōnis m phial

fluidus, a, um liquid

folicus, a, um folic

folium, i n leaf

fructus, us m fruit

G

Glucosum, i n glucose

Glycyramum, i n glycyram

granulum, i n granule

H

haemostaticus, a, um haemostatic

Helianthus, i m sunflower

hydrochlorīdum, i n hydrochloride

Hydrocortisōnum, i n

hydrocortisone

I

In (Abl.) in

infans, ntis m, f child

infusio, ōnis f infusion

injectio, ōnis f injection

intravenōsus, a, um intravenous

L

lactas, ātis m lactate

lamella, ae f film (ophthalmic)

Leonūrus, i m motherwort

linimentum, i n liniment

M

Magnesium, i n magnesium

medicinālis, e medical

membranūla, ae f film

Methylēnum, i n methylene

N

Naphthalānum, i n naphthalan

narcōsis, is f narcosis

Natrium, i n sodium

Norsulfazōlum, i n norsulphazol

O

obductus, a, um coated

Oestradiōlum, i n oestradiol

oleum, i n oil

ophthalmīcus, a, um ophthalmic

orōtas, ātis m orotate

oxŷdum, i n oxide

P

parenterālis, e parenteral

pectorālis, e pectoral

Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n

phenoxymethylpenicillin

Phenylum, i n phenyl

Phthalazōlum, i n phthalazol

Phytīnum, i n phytin

Phytomenadiōnum, i n

phytomenadion

Plumbum, i n lead

polyvitaminōsus, a, um

polyvitaminous

pro (Abl.) for

pulvis, ěris m powder

Pyridoxīnum, i n pyridoxine

Pyromecaīnum, i n pyromecain

Q

quantum satis in sufficient amount

Quercus, us f oak

R

radix, ĩcis f root

rectificātus, a, um rectified

rentgenum, i n roentgenoscopy

rhizōma, ātis n rhizome

Riboflavinum, i n riboflavin

Ricīnus, i m castor oil plant

Rifathyroīnum, i n rifathyroin

Rosa, ae f dog rose, wild rose

S

salicylas, ātis m salicylate

seu or

simplex, ĩcis simple

sirūpus, i m syrup

solubīlis, e soluble

solutio, ōnis f solution

species, ěrum f species

spirituōsus, a, um spirituous

spirītus, us m spirit

spongia, ae f sponge

stabilisātus, a, um stabilized

Streptocīdum, i n streptocide

Sulfacylum, i n sulfacyl
sulfas, ātis m sulphate
Sulfur, ūris n sulphur
suppositorium, i n suppository
suspensio, ōnis f suspension
Synthomycīnum, i n synthomycine

T

tabuleta, ae f tablet
Testosterōnum, i n testosterone
Theobrominum-natrium, i n
theobromine sodium
Theophedrīnum, i n theophedrin
Theophyllīnum, i n theophylline
Thymalīnum, i n thymalin

Thyreoidīnum, i n thyreoidin
tinctūra, ae f tincture

U

unguentum, i n ointment
usus, us m use

V

vaginālis, e vaginal
Valeriāna, ae f valerian
vernālis, e existing in spring
vitamīnum, i n vitamin
vitreus, a, um vitreous
vitrum, i n phial, glass

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

acetic acetīcus, a, um
acid acīdum, i n
Adonis Adōnis, ĩdis m, f
Adonis vernalis(=sping pheasant's eye) Adōnis (ĩdis m, f)
vernālis (is, e)
adult adultus, i m; adultus, a, um
aerosol aērosōlum, i n
alcohol Allochōlum, i n
althea Althaea, ae f
aluminium Aluminium, i n
amidopyrin Amidopyrīnum, i n
ampoule ampulla, ae f
anaesthesin Anaesthesinum, i n
antiasthmatic antiasthmaīcus, a, um
antipyrin Antipyrīnum, i n
apomorphine Apomorphīnum, i n
ascorbic ascorbinīcus, a, um

B

bark cortex, ĩcis m
basic acetate subacētas, ātis m
basic nitrate subnītras, ātis m
belladonna Belladonna, ae f
benzoate benzoas, ātis m
bismuth Bismūthum, i n
boric borīcus, a, um
bromide bromīdum, i n
broncholytin Broncholytīnum, i n

C

calcium Calcium, i n
camphomen "Camphomēnum"
(Camphomēnum, i n)
camphoric camphorātus, a, um
capsule capsūla, ae f
carbonate carbōnas, ātis m
castor oil oleum Ricīni
children infantes, ium m, f

chloride chlorīdum, i n
chloroform Chloroformium, i n
citrate citras, ātis m
clear purus, a, um
coated obductus, a, um
cocoa Cacāo (without a dictionary form)
codeine Codeīnum, i n
collagen collagenīcus, a, um
collodium Collodium, i n
compound composītus, a, um
copper Cuprum, i n

D

decoction decoctum, i n
diluted dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol Dimedrōlum, i n
distilled destillātus, a, um
drops dragées
dry siccus, a, um

E

emulsion emulsum, i n
ephatin Ephatīnum, i n
eryhaem Eryhaemum, i n
erynit Erynītum, i n
erythromycin Erythromycinum, i n
ether aether, ěris m
eucalyptus Eucalyptus, i f
extract extractum, i n

F

feracryl "Feracrylum"
(Feracrylum, i n)
fibrinolysin Fibrollysīnum, i n
film lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f
finest subtilissīmus, a, um
flax Linum, i n
flower flos, floris m
for pro (Abl.); ad (Acc.) + usum

foxglove Digitālis, is f
furazolidone Furazolidōnum, i n

G

glass 1) vitrum, i n; 2) vitreus, a, um
glucose Glucōsum, i n
glutaminic glutaminīcus, a, um
glyceric glycerinōsus, a, um
glycerin Glycerīnum, i n
glycin Glycīnum, i n
granule granūlum, i n

H

haemophobin Haemophobīnum, i n
haemostatic haemostaticus, a, um
hawthorn Crataegus, i f
herb herba, ae f
hydrocarbonate hydrocarbōnas,
ātis m
hydrochloric hydrochlorīcus, a, um
hydrochloride hydrochlorīdum, i n
hydrogen Hydrogenium, i n
hydrotartrate hydrotartras, ātis m
hydroxide hydroxĭdum, i n
hypertonic hypertonicus, a, um

I

ichthyol Ichthyōlum, i n
icy glaciālis, e
in in (in pharmaceutical terms with
Ablative)
inhalation inhalatio, ōnis f
injection injectio, ōnis f
in sufficient amount quantum satis
intramuscular intramusculāris, e
intranasal intranasālis, e
intratracheal intratracheālis, e
intravenous intravenōsus, a, um
introduction inductio, ōnis f
iodine Iōdum, i n
isotonic isotonīcus, a, um

L

lactic lactīcus, a, um
lead Plumbum, i n
leaf folium, i n
licorice Glycyrrhīza, ae f
lily of the valley Convallaria, ae f
liniment linimentum, i n
lipoic lipoīcus, a, um
liquid fluīdus, a, um

M

magnesium Magnesium, i n
matricary Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal medicinālis, e
menthol Menthōlum, i n
mercury Hydrargĭrum, i n
methyluracil Methyluracīlum, i n
mint Mentha, ae f
morphine Morphīnum, i n
morpholong Morpholongum, i n
mycoseptin Mycoseptīnum, i n

N

naphthalan Naphthalānum, i n
narcosis narcōsis, is f
neomycin Neomycīnum, i n
nicotinic nicotinīcus, a, um
norsulphazol Norsulfazōlum, i n
nitroglycerin Nitroglycerīnum, i n
number numērus, i m

O

oak Quercus, us f
oestradiol Oestradiōlum, i n
oil oleum, i n
oily oleōsus, a, um
ointment unguentum, i n
oleandomycin Oleandomycīnum, i n
ophthalmic ophthalmīcus, a, um
oxide oxĭdum, i n

P

packet fasciculus, i m
papaverine Papaverinum, i n
paste pasta, ae f
peach Persicum, i n
peach oil Oleum Persicorum
pectoral pectoralis, e
pepper piperitus, a, um
phenobarbital Phenobarbitolum, i n
phenyl Phenylum, i n
phial vitrum, i n
phosphate phosphas, ātis m
phthalazol Phthalazolium, i n
phthivazid Phthivazidum, i n
phytomenadion
Phytomenadiolum, i n
plaster emplastrum, i n
plastic polyaethylenicus, a, um
platyphylline Platyphyllinum, i n
polyethylenoxid
Polyaethylenoxidum, i n
potassium Kalium, i n
powder pulvis, ěris m
precipitated praecipitatus, a, um
praegoestrol Praegoestrolum, i n
purified (about solid substances)
purificatus, a um

R

rectal rectalis, e
rectified (about liquid substances)
rectificatus, a, um
rhizome rhizoma, ātis n
rhubarb Rheum, i n
riboflavin Riboflavinum, i n
root radix, ĩcis f

S

salicylate salicylas, ātis m
salicylic salicylicus, a, um
sarcolysin Sarcolysinum, i n
seed semen, ĩnis n

simple simplex, ĩcis
sodium Natrium, i n
soluble solubilis, e
soluthizone Soluthizolum, i n
solution solutio, ōnis f
species species, ěrum f (only plur.)
spirit (alcohol) spiritus, us m
spirituous spirituosus, a, um
sponge spongia, ae f
spring vernalis, e
srophanthus Srophanthus, i m
starch Amylum, i n
streptocide Streptocidum, i n
strophanthine Strophanthinum, i n
strophanthus Strophanthus, i m
sublingual sublingualis, e
such talis, e
sugar Saccharum, i n
sulphadimezine Sulfadimezinum, i n
sulphadimidine Sulfadimidinum, i n
sulphate sulfas, ātis m
sulphur sulfur, ũris n
sunflower Helianthus, i m
synoestrol Synoestrolum, i n
synthomycin Synthomycinum, i n
suppository suppositorium, i n
suspension suspensio, ōnis f
syrup sirupus, i m

T

tablet tabuletta, ae f
tea thea, ae f
terrilytine Terrilytinum, i n
tetracycline Tetracyclinum, i n
testoenat Testoenatum, i n
theophylline Theophyllinum, i n
thioacetazone Thioacetazolium, i n
thymogen Thymogenum, i n
thyroidin Thyroidinum, i n
tincture tinctura, ae f
trituration trituratio, ōnis f

U

up to ad

use usus, us m

V

vaginal vaginālis, e

valerian Valeriāna, ae f

vaseline Vaselīnum, i n

vitreous vitreus, a, um

W

water aqua, ae f

wheat Tritīcum, i n

with cum (Abl.)

Y

yellow flavus, a, um

Z

zinc Zincum, i n

Part IV CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 19

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY. ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

§ 112. GENERAL REMARKS ON LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

Clinical names are the most numerous among all medical terms, as these names signify a huge amount of different diseases, pathological conditions and abnormalities, medical examinations and operations. This terminology also includes a great amount of paramedical vocabulary. It is estimated that about 50 % of English medical terms are of Greek origin, but this relation is particularly evident in clinical terms.

The word **clinical** itself is of Greek origin (*klinike* means bed) and it is the acknowledgement of the important role of Greek physicians in both theoretical and practical medicine. Thanks to Greek physicians many diseases got their names and via Latin became a part of European medical languages. New clinical names coming into use were built, as a rule, on the basis of Greek vocabulary and Greek morphological elements. The grammar form of new clinical terms corresponds to the norms of Latin or some European languages. This historical tradition, in particular, is followed in English. For example:

Latin	English	Meaning
adenītis	adenitis	inflammation of a gland
cardiopathia	cardiopathy	disease of the heart
osteōma	osteoma	tumour made up of bone tissue

It is indisputable that clinical terms composed on the basis of Greek morphological elements have a very important advantage: they are short, but may stand for a large clinical definition. That is why they are the priority choice of the physicians all over the world, and everyone who has a M. D. must know the rules of word building of medical terms and learn lexical and morphological word building elements.

§ 113. THE MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE OF ONE-WORD CLINICAL TERMS

From the point of view of their morphological structure, one-word clinical terms can be: 1) simple, containing only one stem; 2) compound, consisting of two or more morphological elements.

About 15 % clinical names belong to the first group, e. g. *asthma*, ātis n — *asthma*; *cancer*, cri m — *cancer*; *herpes*, ětis m — *herpes*; *ulcus*, ěris n — *ulcer*. These noun-terms are mostly used in combination with adjectives or nouns: *asthma bronchiāle* — *bronchial asthma*; *ulcus gastris* — *ulcer of the stomach*.

The majority of one-word clinical terms consist of two or more morphological elements. These elements can be expressed by:

I. Greek affixes (prefixes, suffixes) and roots of nouns or adjectives. In this case, the name can contain:

I.1. A prefix, a root, a suffix and an ending (mostly **-ia**, **-ēma**, **-ismus**, **-ītis**, **-ōma**, **-ōsis**):

parametrītis, ĭdis f — parametritis (tissue inflammation near uterus). The name includes: a) the prefix **para-** (near); b) the root **metr-** (uterus); c) the suffix **-ītis** (combination of suffix **-it-** and ending **-is**) with the constant meaning of “inflammation”;

I.2. A prefix, one or more roots and an ending:

atrichia, ae f — atrichia (lack of hair). The name includes: a) the prefix **a-** (absence, lack, cessation of a function) b) the root **trich-** (hair) c) the ending **-ia**;

hypermetropia, ae f — hypermetropia (long-sightedness). The name includes: a) the prefix **hyper-** (excessive function); b) the root **-metr-** (measurement); c) the final root **-opia** (sight);

I.3. A root and a suffix (suffixed ending): **chondrōma**, ātis n — chondroma (tumour of cartilaginous tissue). The name includes: a) the root **chondr-** (cartilage); b) the suffix **-ōma** with the meaning “tumour”(=tumor).

2. The initial and final word building roots in combination with the term endings **-ia**, **-ēma**, **-ismus**, **-ītis**, **-ōma**, **-ōsis**, **-us**. If the initial word building root hereby ends up with a consonant and the final one begins with a consonant too, these roots are joined via a connecting vowel **-o-**:

rhinopathia, ae f — rhinopathy (disease of the nose). The name includes: 1) the root **rhin-** (nose); 2) the connecting vowel **-o-**; 3) the root **path-** (disease);

otorhinolaryngolōgus, i m — otorhinolaryngologist (the doctor for treating ear, nose and larynx diseases). The name includes: a) the root **ot-** (ear); b) the root **rhin-** (nose); c) the root **laryng-** (larynx); d) the final root **-logus** (a medical specialist).

If the first root ends with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** is usually omitted:

pelvimetria, ae f — pelvimetry (pelvis measurement);

tachycardia, ae f — tachycardia (abnormally fast heart rate).

If the second root begins with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** as a rule is omitted too:

haemat + uria → **haematuria**, ae f — hematuria (blood in the urine);

odont + algia → **odontalgia**, ae f — odontalgia (toothache, feeling of pain in the tooth).

Though there are some exceptions from this rule: e. g. the roots **broncho-** and **bronchi-** never lose their final vowels: **bronchiectasia, ae f** (=bronchoectasia) — bronchiectasis (expansion of the bronchi); **bronchoadenitis, itīdis f** — bronchoadenitis (inflammation of lymphatic glands). The root **bi-** is always used with the connecting -o-: biocycle, biology, microbiology, biopharmaceutics.

§ 114. SOME NOTES ON THE WORD STRESSING IN CLINICAL NAMES

In the compound nouns with the ending **-ia** the last but one vowel “**i**” is, as a rule, stressed contrary to the rule “vowel before vowel is short”: atrichía, bronchiectasía, haematuría, hypermetropía, odontalgía, rhinopathía. The noun **anatómia** (anatomy) and nouns with the final element **-logia** keep the third syllable from the end stressed: cardiología (cardiology), neurológia (neurology), fisiológia (physiology).

§ 115. INITIAL AND FINAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Initial root elements are combined in a one-word term, as you could see above, with the final roots via the connecting vowel -o- or with the final suffixes. These roots are presented in the table of each lesson in the following consequence: 1) the Greek root; 2) its Latin equivalent in the dictionary form; 3) English meaning; 4) English clinical word element:

ger-, geront-	senex, is m	1) old man; 2) old age	ger-, geront-
---------------	-------------	------------------------	---------------

Initial roots can have two or more variants: ger-, geront- (old man or old age); haem-, haemat- (blood). All these variants are to be learnt by heart.

Final root elements are not as numerous as initial ones, but their word building capacity is very high. One should also remember that the final root or suffixed word building element comes first in the literal translation of the term, for example:

The term nephrographia, ae f consists of the initial root **nephr-** (kidney) and the final root **-graphia** (X-ray examination), so the literal translation is “X-ray examination of the kidneys”, nephrography.

The term myōma, ātis n consists of the initial root **my-** (muscle) and the final root **-oma** (tumour), so the literal translation is “tumour of muscular tissue”, myoma.

Final root elements can be part of an adjective too, e. g.: **-gēnus, a, um** in the **term** biogēnus, a, um — biogenic (caused by a living organism).

The final roots are presented at each lesson in the table like that:

-logus — a specialist in a brunch of science or medicine

-iāter — a doctor, specialist in a brunch of clinical medicine

Some roots may be both initial and final. Final roots have common endings, mostly the ending **-ia**. For example: the initial root **ophthalm-** and

the final root **-ophthlmia** have the same meaning “eye”. In these cases, both roots are placed in the same cell of the table.

§ 116. NAMES OF THE MAIN BRANCHES OF CLINICAL MEDICINE

Names of the main branches of clinical medicine are usually formed by means of the final root element **-logia** and the appropriate initial one, which determines the cardinal sense of the term. It should be mentioned that the most numerous names of medico-biological sciences are built according to this rule:

ophthalm- (eye) + logia → ophthalmologia, ae f — ophthalmology, a branch of clinical medicine treating eye diseases;

proct- (rectum) + logia → proctologia, ae f — proctology, a branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases. Compare as well:

immunologia, ae f — immunology, a science about immunity;

pharmacologia, ae f — pharmacology, a science about drugs and their usage;

physiologia, ae f — physiology, a science about normal vital processes in human organism.

Names of some branches of clinical medicine are built by adding the root **-patho-** (disease) and the final root **-logia** to the initial root:

neur- (nerve) + -patho- + logia → neuropathologia, ae f — neuropathology, clinical neurology, a branch of clinical medicine treating nerve diseases;

sex- (sex) + -patho- + logia → sexopathologia, ae f — sexopathology, a branch of medicine dealing with sexual disorders.

Some names of medical branches are formed by means of the final root element **-iatria**, which means some definite branches of clinical medicine:

geriatria, ae f — geriatrics, a particular branch of medicine treating diseases of older age;

paediatria, ae f — pediatrics, a branch of medicine treating children’s diseases;

phoniatria, ae f — phoniatics, a branch of medicine treating disorders of voice production;

phthisiatria, ae f — phthisiology, a branch of medicine treating tuberculosis;

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatrics (psychiatry), a branch of medicine treating mental diseases.

§ 117. NAMES OF MEDICAL SPECIALISTS

Most names of medical specialists are composed of the final root element **-logus** and the appropriate initial root element which determines the cardinal sense of the term. In this way the names of most biological and medical specialists are formed:

anthropolōgus, i m — anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution;

biolōgus, i m — biologist, a specialist studying forms of life and living organisms;

diaetolōgus, i m — dietitian, a specialist in the dietary nutrition;

haematolōgus, i m — hematologist, a specialist in blood diseases.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-pathologia**, then the name of a specialist has the ending **-patholōgus**:

neuropathologia → **neuropatholōgus, i m** — neuropathologist, a specialist in nerve diseases;

sexopathologia → **sexopatholōgus, i m** — sexopathologist, a specialist treating sexual disorders.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-iatria**, then the name of a specialist has the ending **-iāter**:

paediatricia → **paediāter, tri m** — pediatrician (=pediatrist), a specialist in children's diseases.

Finally, many Latin names of medical specialists are built by means of the suffix **-ista** and the initial root element:

oculista, ae m — oculist, a specialist treating eye diseases;

therapeutista, ae m — physician, therapist, a specialist treating inner organs.

§ 118. SOME NOTES ON THE NAMES OF MEDICAL SPECIALISTS IN LATIN AND ENGLISH

Names of medical specialists in Latin don't fully coincide with the English equivalents, as seen above. The difference lies not only on the morphological level (phtisiāter, tri m — phtisiologist), — sometimes the lexical units don't correspond to each other. For example, the name otorhinolaryngologist is not quite common for English or American medical vocabulary; — instead three separate terms are used: otologist, rhinologist and laryngologist. But, the term otolaryngologist is used as well. That is why it is more convenient to use this slightly artificial, but formally correct term otorhinolaryngologist, than to bring three English terms as equivalents. And otherwise, we tend to use the terms presented both in modern English and Latin medical language.

§ 119. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS AND METHODS OF TREATMENT

The names of medical examinations are usually formed by means of the final root elements **-graphia**, **-metria**, **-scopia**, **-diagnostica**:

cystographia, ae f — cystography, X-ray examination of the urinary bladder;

pelvimetria, ae f — pelvimetry, measuring of pelvis size in women;

proctoscopia, ae f — proctoscopy, internal examination of the rectum;

thermodiagnostīca, ae f — thermodiagnosics, a diagnosis via infrared radiation.

Names which signify methods of medical treatment usually contain the final root element **-therapia** and the initial root element indicating a method of treatment:

physiotherapia, ae f — physiatrics, treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors;

phytotherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, treatment by means of medicinal herbs.

Results of X-ray, electric or other methods of medical examination are expressed by the final root **-gramma**:

haemogramma, ātis n — hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood;

mammogramma, ātis n — mammogram, an X-ray film of breast.

§ 120. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
anthrop-	homo, ĩnis m	man	anthrop-
bi-	vita, ae f	life	bi-
cardi-	cor, cordis n	heart	cardi-
ger-, geront-	senex, senis m	old man or old age	ger-, geront-
gynaec-	femīna, ae f	woman	gynaec-
haem-, haemat-	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood	hem-, hemat-
mast-, mamm-	mamma, ae f	breast	mast-, mamm-
neur-	nervus, i m	nerve	neur-
ophthalm-, -ophthalmia	ocūlus, i m	eye	ophthalm-, -ophthalmia
ot-	auris, is f	ear	ot-
paed-	infans, ntis m, f	child	ped-
path-	morbus, i m	disease	path-
pharmac-	medicamentum, i n	drug	pharmac-
phthisi-	tuberculosis, is f	tuberculosis	phthisi-
physi-	natūra, ae f	nature	physi-
phyt-	planta, ae f	plant, herb	phyt-
proct-	rectum, i n	rectum	proct-
psych-	ānĭmus, i m	psyche	psych-
rhin-	nasus, i m	nose	rhin-
somat-	corpus, ōris n	body	somat-
stom-, stomat-	os, oris n	mouth	stom-, stomat-

§ 121. TABLE OF FINAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-diagnostīca	examination of functional state of organs in order to reveal some disorders
-gēnus, a, um	caused by any factor
-graphia	1) X-ray examination; 2) examination by means of electricity; 3) recording of the result of some examination
-gramma	result of some medical examination seen on a film or presented graphically
-iater	medical specialist treating certain inner diseases
-iatria	any definite branch of clinical medicine
-logia	name of some science or branch of clinical medicine
-logus	name of medical or biological specialists
-metria	measurement of physical characteristics of human body
-scopia	visual or instrumental visual examination
-therapia	method of treatment

So, your task is to memorize the word building elements of this and the following lessons and combine these elements in terms. If you are not quite sure of your version of translation, consult the dictionary.

§ 122. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

cardi-, neur-, ot-, paed-, path-, pharmac-, physi-, phyt-, proct-, psych-

2. Give the Greek morphological elements corresponding to the following Latin nouns:

aņimus, i m; auris, is f; corpus, ōris n; femīna, ae f; homo, ĩnis m; medicamentum, i n; morbus, i m; oculus, i m; sanguis, ĩnis m; senex, senis m; tuberculōsis, is f; vita, ae f

3. Determine orally the full dictionary form of each term and the meaning of the initial and final roots, write down the full definition:

anthropologia; anthropogēnus; biolōgia; cardiolōgus; cardiogēnus; craniometria; geriāter; gynaecolōgus; haematologia; iatrogēnus; mastogramma; neuropatholōgus; ophthalmoscopia; otorhinolaryngologia; physiologia; phthisiāter; phytotherapia; proctolōgus; psychiatria; rhinogramma; somatologia; stomatoscopia

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases; branch of medicine treating diseases of children; diagnosis via examination of iris; medical specialist treating blood diseases; medical specialist treating inner organs; measurement of pelvis in women; results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; science studying drugs and their usage; treatment by

means of natural or artificial physical factors; specialist studying forms of life and living organisms; specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; treatment by means of medical herbs; the X-ray examination of mamma

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition in English of the terms:

anthropologist; biopharmaceutics; cardiogram; cardiography; gerontology; hematology; hemogram; iatrogenic; iridodiagnostics; mammogram; neurogenic; ophthalmoscopy; otogenic; otolaryngologist; pediatrician; pharmacotherapy; phthisiologist; phytotherapy; proctodiagnostics; proctoscopy; psychiatrist; psychogenic; psychologist; rhinoscopy; somatology; stomatology; therapist; thoracometry

§ 123. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 19

Latin-English vocabulary

anthropologia, ae f — anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution

anthropolōgus, i m — anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution

biologia, ae f — biology, science studying forms of life and vital organisms

cardiolōgus, i m — cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases

cardiogēnus, a, um — cardiogenic, happening because of the heart

craniometria, ae f — craniometry, measurement size of the skull

geriāter, tri m — geriatrician, medical specialist treating diseases of the aged

gynaecolōgus, i m — gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women

haematologia, ae f — hematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases

iatrogēnus, a, um — iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks

mastogramma, ātis n — mastogram, result of breast X-ray examination

neuropatholōgus, i m — neuropathologist, specialist treating diseases of the nervous system

ophthalmoscopy, ae f — ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye

otorhinolaryngologia, ae f — otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx

physiologia, ae f — physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body

phthysiāter, tri m — phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis

phytotherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal herbs

proctolōgus, i m — proctologist, specialist treating diseases of rectum

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases
rhinogramma, ātis n — rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose
somatologia, ae f — somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of the human body
stomatoscopia, ae f — stomatoscopy, visual examination of the oral cavity

English-Latin vocabulary

anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution — anthropolōgus, i m
biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances — biopharmaceutīca, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases — proctologia, ae f
branch of medicine treating diseases of children — paediatría, ae f
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical picture of heart action — cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical recording of heart action — cardiographia, ae f
diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics — iridodiagnostīca, ae f
hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood — haemogramma, ātis n
iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks — iatrogēnus, a, um
iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris — iridodiagnostīca, ae f
measurement of pelvis in women, pelvimetry — pelvimetria, ae f
medical specialist treating blood diseases, hematologist — haematolōgus, i m
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system disorders — neurogēnus, a, um
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye — ophthalmoscopia, ae f
otogenic, happening because of the ear — otogēnus, a, um
otolaryngologist, specialist treating ear and larynx diseases — otolaryngolōgus, i m
pediatrician, specialist treating children's diseases — paediāter, tri m
pharmacotherapy, the treatment of disease with drugs — pharmacotherapia, ae f
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs — phytotherapia, ae f
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum — proctodiagnostica, ae f
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum — proctoscopia, ae f
psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases — psychiāter, tri m

phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis — phthisiāter, tri m
 results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram —
 haemogramma, ātis n
 rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose — rhinoscopia, ae f
 science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology — pharmacologia, ae f
 somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body —
 somatologia, ae f
 specialist studying forms of life and living organisms, biologist — biolōgus, i m
 specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist —
 anthropolōgus, i m
 specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist) —
 therapeutista, ae m
 stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity —
 stomatologia, ae f
 therapist, specialist treating diseases of inner organs — therapeutista, ae m
 thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax — thoracometria, ae f
 treatment by means of medicinal herbs, phytotherapy — phytotherapia, ae f
 treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy —
 physiotherapia, ae f
 the X-ray examination of mamma, mammography — mammographia, ae f

Lesson 20

ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

§ 124. ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS

Usually, one-word names of functional disorders are composed of Greek prefixes and roots. There are the following prefixes:

1. The prefix **a-** (before a consonant) or **an-** (before a vowel). This prefix signifies cessation or loss of a function as well as lack of property:

adentia, ae f — lack of teeth, adentia;

anuria, ae f — complete cessation of the secretion and excretion of urine, anuria;

aphagia, ae f — a condition in which the ability of swallowing is lacking, aphagia;

In the same way the Latin prefix **in-** (**im-** before consonants **b** or **m**) combined with Latin roots is used both in nouns and adjectives:

incontinentia, ae f — lack of voluntary control over the discharge of faeces or urine, incontinence;

insufficiētia, ae f — state of being inadequate to perform normal functions, insufficiency;

immobilitas, ātis f — lack of mobility, immobility;

insensibilis, e — lack of sensibility or intelligence, insensible.

2. The prefix **dys-** signifies functional disorders:

dysgeusia, ae f — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia;

dysthyreōsis, is f — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreōsis;

dysuria, ae f — condition in which the passage of urine is difficult, dysuria.

3. The prefix **en-** (**em-** before consonants **b, m, p**) indicates the inner location of any morbid condition:

empyēma, ātis n — accumulation of pus in a cavity;

enophthalmus, i m — recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit

As prefixed elements some Greek adjectives, pronouns and numerals are used:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English translation
auto-	self-, resulting of one's own action	autopepsia, ae f (autolysis, is f)	the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia (autolysis)
mono-	one (part)	monoplegia, ae f	a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia
di-	two (parts)	diplegia, ae f	paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia
hemi-	half	hemialgia, ae f	neuralgic pain affecting the right or the left side of the body or the right or the left side of any part of the body, hemialgia

§ 125. ONE-WORD NAMES OF PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

The majority of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions are composed of Greek roots, suffixes and endings which are adapted to Latin grammar system. One group of terms consists of a root, a suffix and an ending. Two suffixes of this group compose a morphological unity with their endings:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ismus (suffix -ism- + -us , ending of the 2nd declension)	abnormality or pathological process, the meaning of which is determined by the root element	botulismus, i m	botulism	a form of food poisoning due to the botulinum toxin
-ōsis (suffix -os- + -is , ending of the 3rd declension)	pathological condition or process	dermatōsis, is f	dermatōsis	any skin disease

Attention! The final suffix *-ōsis* may be used as the morphological part of a noun term not denoting a disease:

diagnōsis, is f — diagnosis, the scientific recognition of the disease from which a person suffers;

symbiōsis, is f — symbiosis, the intimate association of two organisms.

The next two suffixes are considered as final suffixed elements of the nouns of the 3rd declension:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ēma	different pathological conditions	enanthēma, ātis n	enanthema	the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue
-iāsis	different pathological conditions	psoriāsis, is f	psoriasis	a chronic disease of the skin characterized by the appearance of laminated scales

But the majority of terms composed of morphological elements present with initial and final roots. First of all, the root **path-** combined with the ending **-ia** is used:

arthropathia, ae f — any disease affecting a joint, athropathy;

nephropathia, ae f — a disease of the kidney, nephropathy;

rhinopathia, ae f — any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy.

Other roots are also used as final elements which define more precisely the character of pathological condition, e. g.:

angiorrhagia, ae f — a hemorrhage from a vessel, angiorrhagia;

arthralgia, ae f — any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia;

cancerophobia, ae f — unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (=carcinomatophobia).

Nevertheless, about 20 % of one-word terms signifying pathological processes and abnormal conditions are nouns comprised of one root:

coma, ātis n — the state of complete loss of consciousness with a disorder of vitally important functions, coma;

infarctus, us m — an area of dead tissue produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarction;

insultus, us m — cerebral thrombosis, stroke;

sepsis, is f — infection with pyogenic microorganisms, sepsis

§ 126. INITIAL GREEK ROOTS AND THEIR LATIN EQUIVALENTS

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
angi-	vas, vasis n	vessel	angi-
arthr-	articulatio, ōnis f	joint	arthr-
brady-	lentus, a, um	slow	brady-
cephal-	caput, ĩtis n	head	cephal-

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
chondr-	cartilāgo, ĩnis f	cartilage	chondr-
dactyl-, -dactylia	digĭtus, i m	finger or toe	dactyl-
derm-, dermat-, -dermia	cutis, is f	skin	derm-, dermat-, -dermia
encephal-	cerĕbrum, i n	brain	encephal-
my-	muscŭlus, i m	muscle	my-
nephr-	ren, renis m	kidney	nephr-
oste-	os, ossis n	bone	oste-
phon-, -phonia	vox, vocis f	voice	phon-, -phonia
phot-	lux, lucis f	light	phot-
phleb-	vena, ae f	vein	phleb-
pseud-	falsus, a, um	false	pseud-
spasm-, -spasmus	spasmus, i m	spasm	spasm-, -spasm
tox-, toxic-	venĕnum, i n	poison	tox-, toxic-
tachy-	celer, ěris, ěre	fast, quick	tachy-
trich-, -trichia	capillus, i m; pilus, i m	hair	trich-
xer-	siccus, a, um	dry	xer-

§ 127. TABLE OF FINAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-algia	pain in any part of the body
-geusia	different pathological conditions of taste
-kinesia	different pathological conditions of voluntary motion
-malacia	pathological softening of an organ or tissue
-mania	any form of mental disorder accompanied by some degree of excitation
-mycōsis	a morbid condition caused by a pathogenic fungus
-opia, -opsia	any condition of vision
-pathia	a general name of a disease of any organ due to various causes
-pepsia	any condition of digestion
-phagia	any pathological condition in the act of swallowing
-philia	predisposition to any morbid condition
-phobia	a pathological fear
-plegia	paralysis (palsy) of the muscles of any organ
-pnoĕ	a pathological condition of breathing
-trophia	nutrition

§ 128. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

angi-, arthr-, chondr-, nephr-, phon-, phot-, phleb-, pseud-, tachy-, trich-

2. Give the Greek roots corresponding to the following Latin nouns or adjectives:

caput, ĩtis n; cutis, is f; digĭtus, i m; lentus, a, um; os, ossis n; siccus, a, um; vena, ae f; venĕnum, i n.

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term and its English equivalent:

angiopathia; arthromalacia; autohaemotherapia; autopepsia; bradyphagia; bradypnoë; chondropathia; dactylospasmus; dermatōsis; dermatomycōsis; dysgeusia; encephalogramma; gastrospasmus; hemicrania; hemianopsia; hemiplegia; monodactylismus; myoplegia; osteomalacia; osteopathia; phlebocarcinōma; photophobia; pseudoarthrōsis; spasmophilia; stomatomycōsis; tachycardia; toxicomania; xerophthalmia

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal quickness in eating; a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales; a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking; any disease affecting a joint; any disease of the skin; any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; any morbid condition of the nose; a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is affected; impairment of any voice; kind of pain affecting a joint; paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body; the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue; the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart; unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma

5. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

angiology; apnoea; arthralgia; atrichia; atrophy; autolaryngoscopy; autopsy; biopsy; bradycardia; cephalalgia; didactylism; dystrophy; encephalomalacia; enophthalmus; hemiatrophy; hemophilia; mastopathy; monopathophobia, myopia, nephrogenic, nephropathy, ophthalmoplegia, osteochondrosis; osteodystrophy; pharmacophobia; phoniatics; phlebography; phonocardiogram; photophobia; proctospasm; rhinopathy; tachyphagia; toxicosis; xerostomia

§ 129. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 20

Latin-English vocabulary

angiopathia, ae f — any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy

arthromalacia, ae f — softening of joints, arthromalacia

autohaemotherapia, ae f — a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy

autopepsia, ae f — the process of a spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia

bradyphagia, ae f — slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia

bradypnoë, es f — an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea

chondropathia, ae f — any disease affecting a cartilage, chondropathy

dactylospasmus, i m — spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm
 dermatōsis, ae f — any disease of the skin, dermatosis
 dysgeusia, ae f — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia
 dermatomycōsis, ae f — a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi
 encephalogramma, ātis n — any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram
 gastrospasmus, i m — an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm
 hemicrania, ae f — a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania
 hemianopsia, ae f (=hemianopia, ae f) — loss of half the vision in each eye, hemianopsia (hemianopia)
 hemiplegia, ae f — paralysis of one side of the body, hemiplegia
 monodactylismus, i m — a congenital condition in which only one finger or toe is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism
 myoplegia, ae f — paralysis of muscle or a condition in which muscular force is decreased, myoplegia
 osteomalacia, ae f — softening of bones, osteomalacia
 osteopathia, ae f — disease of bones, osteopathia
 phlebocarcinōma, ātis n — a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinoma
 photophobia, ae f — abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia
 pseudarthrōsis, is f — a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudarthrosis
 spasmophilia, ae f — a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and a spasm, spasmophilia
 stomatomycōsis, is f — any morbid condition caused by a microscopical fungus, stomatomycosis
 tachycardia, ae f — a rapid action of the heart, tachycardia
 toxicomania, ae f — an insane desire for poison, toxicomania
 xerophthalmia, ae f — a morbid condition of eyes, characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (=xeroma)

English-Latin vocabulary

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia — tachyphagia, ae f
 a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis — psoriāsis, is f
 a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia — aphagia, ae f
 angiology, the science of blood vessels — angiologia, ae f
 any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy — arthropathia, ae f
 any disease of the skin, dermatosis — dermatōsis, is f

any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia — arthralgia, ae f
 any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy — rhinopathia, ae f
 any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy —
 trichopathia, ae f
 a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one
 part of the body is affected, monoplegia — monoplegia, ae f
 apnea, the cessation of breathing — apnoë, ës f
 arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint — arthralgia, ae f
 atrichia, not having hair — atrichia, ae f
 atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause — atrophia,
 ae f
 autolaryngoscopy, the examination of one's own larynx with a laryngoscope —
 autolaryngoscopia, ae f
 autopsy, post-mortem examination of a body in order to establish the cause of
 death — autopsia, ae f
 biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of issue cut from the living
 body — biopsia, ae f
 bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate — bradycardia, ae f
 cephalalgia, pain in the head — cephalalgia, ae f
 didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or
 two toes on a foot — didactylismus, i m
 dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to
 perverted nutrition — dystrophia, ae f
 encephalomalacia, softening of the brain — encephalomalacia, ae f
 enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit —
 enophthalmus, i m
 hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or one half of
 an organ — hemiatrophia, ae f
 hemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted
 by females — haemophilia, ae f
 impairment of the voice, dysphonia — dysphonia, ae f
 mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland — mastopathia, ae f
 monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease — monopathophobia, ae f
 myopia, short sight — myopia, ae f
 nephrogenic, produced by or originating in the kidney — nephrogënus, a um
 nephropathy, a disease of the kidney — nephropathia, ae f
 ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles — ophthalmoplegia, ae f
 osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues —
 osteochondrosis, is f
 osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition — osteodystrophia, ae f
 paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia — diplegia, ae f

pharmacophobia, a morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines —
 pharmacophobia, ae f
 phoniatrics (=phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech — phoniatria, ae f
 phlebography 1) a radiographic visualization of veins; 2) the tracing of the venous
 pulse by means of a phlebograph — phlebographia, ae f
 phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart
 sounds — phonocardiogramma, ātis n
 photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light — photophobia, ae f
 proctospasm, a spasmodic contraction of the rectum — proctospasmus, i m
 rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose — rhinopathia, ae f
 tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia — tachyphagia, ae f
 the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema — enanthēma, ātis n
 paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia — diplegia, ae f
 the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart,
 angiocardiology— angiocardiology, ae f
 toxicosis, a pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons —
 toxicōsis, is f
 unfounded or unreasonable fear of a predisposition to carcinoma —
 cancerophobia, ae f
 xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland —
 xerostomia, ae f

Lesson 21

NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

§ 130. INCREASE AND DECREASE IN DIFFERENT QUANTITATIVE CONDITIONS

Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions may, as a rule, be expressed by means of the prefixes **hyper-** and **hypo-** which are joined by final root elements:

hyperaesthesia, ae f — excessive sensitiveness of the skin, hyperaesthesia;

hyperkinesia, ae f — a condition in which there is abnormally great strength of movement, hyperkinesia;

hyperplasia, ae f — any condition in which there is an increase in the number of cells in any body's part, hyperplasia;

hypodynamia, ae f — diminished muscular or nervous energy, hypodynamia;

hypogalactia, ae f — the secretion of a too small quantity of milk, hypogalactia;

hypopepsia, ae f — abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia.

Increase and decrease in the functional activity is sometimes expressed by means of the initial roots **tachy-** and **brady-**:

tachypnoë, ës f — abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea

bradykinesia, ae f — abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia

§ 131. INCREASE OR DECREASE IN DIMENSION OF ANATOMICAL AND HISTOLOGICAL STRUCTURES

Increase in size of anatomical or histological structures is expressed by means of the following initial and final roots: **dolich-**, **macr-**, **mega-**, **megal-**, **-megalia**:

dolichocōlon, i n — an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon

macrocytus, i m — a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte

megaduodēnum, i n — duodenum of abnormally large size, megaduodenum

megalosplenja, ae f — enlargement of the spleen, megalosplenja

hepatomegalja, ae f — a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalja

Decrease in size of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the initial roots **brachy-** and **micr-**:

brachydactylja, ae f — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylja

microcephālus, i m — a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus.

Dilatation or narrowing in volume of a hollow organ, cavity or tube is expressed by means of the following roots:

-ectasia, -ectāsis, -dilatatio, sten-, -stenōsis:

bronchiectāsis, is f — a condition of dilatation of a bronchus or bronchi, bronchiectasis

gastrectasia, ae f — dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia

vasodilatatio, ōnis f — dilatation of a blood vessel, vasodilatation

stenostomia, ae f — abnormal narrowness of the mouth, stenostomy

oesophagostenōsis, is f — narrowing of the oesophagus, oesophagostenosis

§ 132. INCREASE AND DECREASE IN THE QUANTITY OF ANATOMICAL AND HISTOLOGICAL STRUCTURES

Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the roots **olig-**, **poly-**, **-penia**:

oligodontia (=oligodentia), ae f — a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia

polyarthropathia, ae f — a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy

erythropenia, ae f — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes in the blood, erythropenia

Increase in the quantity of any anatomical or histological structure may also be expressed by the final prefix **-ōsis**:

leucocytōsis, is f — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis

papillomatōsis, is f — the condition of diffuse formation of papillomata, papillomatosis

§ 133. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Greek root and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word - building equivalents
aesthes-, -aesthesia	sensus, us m	sensibility, sensitiveness	aesthes-, -aesthesia
brachy-	brevis, e	short	brachy-
cheil-, -cheilia	labium, i n	lip	cheil-, -cheilia
cyt-, -cýtus	cellŭla, ae f	cell	cyt-, -cyte
dolich-	longus, a, um	long	dolich-
erythr-	ruber, bra, brum	red	erythr-
gloss-, -glossia	lingua, ae f	tongue	gloss-, -glossia
glyc-	dulcis, e	sugar	glyc-
gnath-, -gnathia	maxilla, ae f	maxilla, upper jaw	gnath-, -gnathia
leuc-	albus, a, um	white	leuc-
macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalia	magnus, a, um	large	macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalia
melan-	niger, gram, grum	black	melan-
micr-	parvus, a, um	small	mict-
myel, -myelia	1) medulla ossium 2) medulla spinālis	1) bone marrow 2) spinal cord	myel, -myelia
odont-, -odonia, -dentia	dens, dentis, m	tooth	odont-, -odonia -dentia
olig-	parvus, a, um	few	olig-
pod-, -podia	pes, pedis m	foot	pod-, -podia
poly-	multus, a, um	many	poly-
splen-, -splenia	lien, ēnis m	spleen	splen-, -splenia
sphygm- -sphygmia	pulsus, us m	pulse	sphygm-, -sphygmia
therm-, -thermia	1) calor, ōris m 2) temperaturā, ae f	1) heat 2) temperature	therm-, -thermia
thyre-	glandŭla thyr(e)oidea	thyroid (gland)	thyro-

Attention! 1. The initial roots **macr-** and **megal-** may be used in many (but not in all!) cases as synonyms: macrocephalia = megalcephalia, macropodia = megalopodia. When choosing the necessary variant of the initial root one should consult the dictionary.

2. The root **-cyt-** can be omitted if the term begins with **erythrocyt-** or **leucocyt-** and ends with **-penia**:

erythrocytopenia = erythropenia; leucocytopenia = leucopenia, but: monocytopenia, thrombocytopenia — the only variants.

§ 134. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-aemia	any condition of the blood
-genēsis	the origin and (formative) development
-genia	any condition of mandible
-mnesia	any condition of the memory
-penia	a diminution in the number of any kind of cells present in the blood
-phrenia	a condition associated with a serious mental disorder
-plasia	the development of tissues
-poēsis	the formation 1) of cells present in the blood; 2) of lymph; 3) of urine
-sthenia	any condition of strength, vigour or forcefulness
-tensio	a condition of arterial blood pressure
-tonia	a condition of muscular tension in the walls of vessels and bowels

§ 135. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

brachy-, dolich-, erythr-, glyc-, leuc-, melan-, micr-, olig-, poly-, thyre-

2. Write the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents and then give:
1) Greek equivalents corresponding to every Latin equivalent 2) English meaning of every pair of equivalents:

calor; cellŭla; dens; labium; lingua; lien; magnus; maxilla; medulla ossium; pes; pulsus; sensus

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term as well as its English equivalent:

amnesia; anaesthesiolōgus; apodia; asthenia; brachycephālus; brachydactylia; dolichocephalia; dysthyreōsis; erythropenia; glossoplegia; glycaemia; hyperaemia; hyperthermia; hypotonia; leucocytōsis; melanoderma; microgenia; micromyelia; odontogenēsis; oligocytaemia; oligophrenia; polymastia; prognathia; sphygmogramma; splenomegalia; thermotherapia; thrombocytopoēsis; thyreotoxicōsis

4. *Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:*

abnormal narrowness of the mouth; abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion; abnormal sluggishness of physical movements; a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes; a condition of enlargement of the liver; an abnormally long colon of normal diameter; an increase in the total number of leucocytes; a pathological condition involving many joints; a person with an unusually small size of head; a red blood cell that is larger than normal; a state in which most of the teeth are lacking; a state in which there are too few erythrocytes; dilatation of the stomach; excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body; the origin and development of bone marrow; the origin and development of morbid condition; extremely rapid breathing

5. *Give the full definition and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:*

aglossia; anaemia; brachyoesophagus; cytology; dolichocolon; dystonia; erythema; gnathalgia; haematomyelia; hepatomegalia; hyperesthesia; hyperglycaemia; hypertension; hypomnesia; hypophrenia; hypoplasia; hypothermia; macrocyte; megaloduodenum; megalomania; melanocarcinoma; micromastia; microsphygmy; monocytopenia; myelocytosis; oligodactylia; podagra; podalgia; polyavitaminosis; splenohepatomegaly

§ 136. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 21

Latin-English vocabulary

amnesia, ae f — loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia

anaesthesiolōgus, i m — a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anaesthesiologist

apodia, ae f — congenital absence of feet, apodia

asthenia, ae f — loss of vital forces, asthenia

brachycephālus, i m — an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic

brachydactylia, ae f — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

dolichocephalia, ae f — the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia

dysthyreōsis, ae f — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

erythropenia, ae f — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

glossoplegia, ae f — paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia

glycaemia, ae f — a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia

hyperaemia, ae f — an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia

hyperthermia, ae f — very high body temperature, hyperthermia

hypotonia, ae f — lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia

leucocytōsis, is f — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood,
leucocytosis

melanoderma, ātis n — a condition in which there is an unusually large
accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma

microgenia, ae f — a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size,
microgenia

micromyelia, ae f — general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia

odontogenēsis, is f — the origin and formative development of teeth,
odontogenesis

oligocytaemia, ae f — a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency,
oligocytaemia

oligophrenia, ae f — congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia

polymastia, ae f — a state in which in human beings there are more than two
distinct mammary glands, polymastia

prognathia, ae f — a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or
both jaws, prognatism

sphygmoramma, ātis n — a record of the arterial pulse waves, sphygmogram

splenomegalia, ae f — enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia

thermotherapia, ae f — the use of heat in the treatment of disease,
thermotherapia

thrombocytopoēsis, is f — the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopoiesis

thyreotoxicōsis, is f — any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of
the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

English-Latin vocabulary

abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia —
hypopepsia, ae f

abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnea — tachypnoë, ës f

a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia — hepatomegalia, ae f

a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia —
brachydactylia, ae f

aglossia, a congenital condition of being devoid of a tongue — aglossia, ae f

an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon — dolichocōlon, i n

anaemia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative
changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood —
anaemia, ae f

an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis — leucocytōsis, is f

a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy —
polyarthropathia, ae f

a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus — microcephālus,
i m

a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte — macrocŷtus, i m

a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodentia — oligodentia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia — erythropenia, ae f
brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus — brachyoesophāgus, i m
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia — gastrectasia, ae f
dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter — dolichocōlon, i n
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells — cytologia, ae f
dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity — dystonia, ae f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia — erythēma, ātis n
excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia —
hyperaesthesia, ae f
extremely rapid breathing, tachypnea — tachypnoë, ës f
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws — gnathalgia, ae f
haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord —
haematomyelia, ae f
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver — hepatomegalia, ae f
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body —
hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood — hyperglycaemia,
ae f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure — hypertensio, ōnis f
hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory — hypomnesia, ae f
hypophrenia, feebleness of mind — hypophrenia, ae f
hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part — hypoplasia, ae f
hypothermia, deficiency of body heat — hypothermia, ae f
macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal — macrocytus, i m
megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size — megaloduodēnum, i n
megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions
about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on —
megalomania, ae f
melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor —
melanocarcinōma, ātis n
micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands — micromastia, ae f
microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse — microsphygmia, ae f
monocytopoiesis, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow —
monocytopoësis, is f
myelocyaemia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood — myelocyaemia, ae f
oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes — oligodactylia, ae f
podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of
arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid — podāgra, ae f
podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot — podalgia, ae f
polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several
vitamins — polyavitaminōsis, is f

splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen — splenohepatomegalia ae f
the origin and development of the bone marrow, myelogenesis — myelogenēsis, is f
the origin and development of a morbid condition, pathogenesis — pathogenēsis, is f

Lesson 22

NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. NAMES OF ABNORMALITIES IN THE STATES OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS

§ 137. NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS

The state of inflammation in any organ or tissue, as a rule, is usually expressed by means of the final suffixed element **-ītis** which is transformed into **-itīdis** in the Genitive form. The suffix **-ītis** is added to the initial root of the noun which defines the place of a morbid state. All the terms with the suffix **-ītis** are nouns of the 3rd declension:

arthr- (joint) + ītis → **arthrītis, itīdis f** — inflammation of a joint, arthritis

hepat- (liver) + ītis → **hepatītis, itīdis f** — inflammation of the liver, hepatitis

The suffix **-ītis** may be added both to the Greek and Latin roots:

nephr- (Greek *nephros kidney*) + ītis → **nephrītis, itīdis f** — an inflammatory disease of the kidneys, nephritis

tonsill- (Latin *tonsilla, ae f tonsil*) + ītis → **tonsillītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the tonsil, tonsillitis

The site of the inflammatory process can be defined more precisely by means of the following prefixes of the Greek origin:

1) **endo-** (inner, mostly a mucous part of an organ):

endo + metr- (utērus, i m) + ītis → **endometrītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis

2) **para-** (cellular, connective and other tissues near an organ):

para- + cyst (urinary bladder) + ītis → **paracystītis, itīdis f** — a condition of inflammation affecting the connective and other tissues lying close to the bladder, paracystitis

3) **peri-** (tissues enclosing an organ):

peri- + card- (heart) + ītis → **pericardītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the membrane enveloping the heart, pericarditis.

Names of some inflammatory morbid conditions are formed without suffix **-ītis**, e. g.:

panaritium, i n — an inflammation in the nail fold, panaris (=panaritium);

pneumonia, ae f — an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung, pneumonia

§ 138. NAMES OF MORBID CONDITIONS OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS

Due to inflammatory processes some specific fluids may accumulate or be produced in cavities and tissues:

exsudātum, i n — a fluid extravasated into a cavity, exudate;

transsudātum, i n — any fluid that has passed through a membrane or the skin, transudate.

The abnormal accumulation of fluid in a tissue or cavity space is generally called **hydrops, ōpis m** — hydrops, dropsy. This noun is used with adjectives and any other noun:

hydrops vesicae felleae — fluid swelling in the gall bladder.

The presence of excessive fluid in the cavity of a definite part of the body is expressed by the prefix **hydro-** and a final root with the ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

hydrometra, ae f — an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra;

hydropericardium, i n — excessive accumulation of serous fluid in the pericardium, hydropericardium;

hydrarthrōsis, is f — a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis.

Pus also refers to the fluids accumulated due to the inflammatory processes. The presence of pus is expressed in one-word terms by the initial root **py-** (Greek pus) and the final roots together with the grammar ending:

pyopericardium, i n — an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium;

pyuria, ae f — a condition in which pus is present in the urine.

The meaning “lymph” is denoted by the initial roots **chyl-** and **lymph-**.

The root **chyl-** is used if lymph is present in a cavity, in the blood or urine:

chylothōrax, ācis m — a condition in which there is an effusion of lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax;

chyluria, ae f — a condition in which the urine contains lymph, chyluria.

The root **lymph-** is used if lymph is considered as a part of lymphatic cells, glands and vessels:

lymphocytōsis, is f — an increase in the number of lymphocytes present in the blood, lymphocytosis;

lymphadenopahia, ae f — any morbid condition of the lymph gland, lymphadenopathy;

lymphangiitis, itidis f — an inflammation of lymphatic vessels, lymphangiitis.

Abnormal presence of blood in a cavity is expressed by the initial root **haem-** or **haemat-** which is added to a root and the final suffix **-ōsis** as well as any grammar ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

haemarthrōsis, is f — an extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis;

haematomētra, ae f — an accumulation of blood or menstrual fluid in the cavity of uterus, haematometra;

haemotympānum, i n — the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum.

An abnormal state of blood circulation is mostly caused by embolaemia — a condition in which emboli are present in the blood. As a result, there occurs a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli — fragments of a blood clot, clumps of bacteria or other foreign bodies introduced into the circulation. Such a condition is named thromboembolism (thromboembolismus, i m or thromboembolia, ae f).

An abnormal cessation of the flow of blood, lymph or other physiological fluid is marked by the final root **-stāsis**:

galactostāsis, is f — an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk, galactostasis;

lymphostāsis, is f — cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis.

§ 139. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOTS

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
aden-	1) glandūla, ae f 2) adenoīdes, um f 3) nodus lymphaticus	1) gland 2) adenoids 3) lymphatic node	aden-
aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-	aēr, is m	air or a gas	aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-
chole-	bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	bile	chole-
cholecyst-	vesīca biliāris (fellea)	gall bladder	cholecyst-
1) chyl-, 2) lymph-	lymp̄ha, ae f	chyle or lymph	chyl-, lymph-
col-, -colon	1) intestīnum crassum 2) colon	1) large intestine 2) colon	col-, -colon col-, -colon
cyst-	1) saccus, i m 2) vesīca, ae f 3) vesīca urinaria	1) sac 2) bladder 3) urinary bladder	cyst-
dacry-	lacrīma, ae f	tear	dacry-
dacryocyst-	saccus lacrimālis	lacrimal sac	dacryocyst-
enter-	1) intestīnum tenue 2) intestīnum	1) small intestine 2) intestine	enter-
galact-, -galactia	lac, lactis n	milk	galact-, -galactia
hidr-	sudor, ōris m	sweat	hidr-

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
hydr-	1) aqua, ae f 2) liquor cerebrospinalis 3) exsudatum, i n 4) transsudatum, i n	1) water 2) cerebrospinal fluid 3) exudate 4) transudate	hydr-
lip-, seb-	1) adeps, ĩpis m 2) sebum, i n	1) fatty tissue of the body 2) the fatty secretion of the sebaceous glands	lip-, seb-
men-	mensis, is m	menses, the monthly discharge of blood from the uterus	men-
pan-, pant-	omnis, e	all	pan-, pant-
poli-	griseus, a, um	grey	poli-
py-	pus, puris n	pus	py-
sial-, -sialia	1) salĭva, ae f 2) ductus salivarii	1) saliva 2) salivary ducts	sial-, -sialia
ur-, -uria	1) urea, ae f 2) urĭna, ae f	1) urea, the chief nitrogenous constituent of urine; 2) urine	ur-, -uria
xanth-	flavus, a, um	yellow	xanth-

§ 140. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-chlorhydria	any state of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice
-chylia	secretion of the gastric juice
-menorrhoea	any condition of menses
-metra	any condition of the uterus
-rrhagia	hemorrhage (bleeding) in any part of the body
-rrhoea	profuse discharge of mucus or other fluid substance
-salivatio	secretion of saliva
-salpinx	any condition of the uterine tube
-stāsis	cessation of the flow of any physiological fluid
-thōrax	any condition of the thorax
-uria	any condition of the urine

§ 141. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

aden-, chole-, col-, cyst-, dacry-, enter-, hidr-, lip-, men-, poli-, py-, xanth-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

adeps, aēr, aqua, flavus, griseus, lac, lacrima, liquor cerebrospinalis, salĭva, sudor, vesĭca urinaria

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

achlorhydria; adenalgia; adenasthenia; aërobion; amenorrhoea; anaërobion; chylothōrax; cholecystitis; cystorrhagia; dacryostenōsis; empyēma; enterocolitis; galactorrhoea; haemarthrosis; hidradenitis; hydromētra; hypochylia; hyposalivatio; lipuria; lymphostāsis; menalgia; megacōlon; pantalgia; polimyelitis; pyogēnus; pyopneumothōrax; pyosalpinx; uraemia; xanthopsia; xanthōsis

4. *Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:*

a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened; acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain; an accumulation of pus in the pericardium; a discharge of pus; a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow; an excessive flow of milk; any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin; a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint; inflammation in the nail fold; inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus; inflammation of the liver; narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland; profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose; the presence of air or gas within a thorax; the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity; a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli; the presence of blood in the urine

5. *Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:*

achylia; aerobic; anaerobic; chyluria; colonorrhagia; cystitis; dacryorrhoea; dysmenorrhoea; dropsy; embolaemia; endometritis; enteromegalia; enterogastritis; galactostasis; haematosalpinx; hydrarthrosis; hidrosis; hydrometra; hypersalivation; hypogalactia; lymphangitis; lymphocytosis; menalgia; panaris; paranephritis; pericystitis; pneumonia; pneumohaemothorax; polioencephalopathy; pyuria; thromboembolism; tonsillitis

§ 142. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 22

Latin-English vocabulary

achlorhydria, ae f — a complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria

adenalgia, ae f — a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia

adenasthenia, ae f — functional deficiency in a gland, adenasthenia

aërobion, i n — a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen, aerobe (aerobian)

amenorrhoea, ae f — the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea

anaërobion, i n — a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe

chylothōrax, ācis m — the condition in which there is an effusion of the lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax

cholecystītis, itīdis f — inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis
 cystorrhagia, ae f — haemorrhage from the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia
 dacryostenōsis, is f — narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland,
 dacryostenosis
 empyēma, ātis n — an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyema
 enterocolītis, itīdis f — an inflamed condition of the small intestine and
 the colon, enterocolitis
 galactorrhoea, ae f — an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea
 haemarthrōsis, osis f — extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis
 hidradenītis, itīdis f — inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis
 hydromētra, ae f — an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus,
 hydrometra
 hypochylia, ae f — a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened,
 hypochylia
 hyposalivatio, ōnis f — a condition in which there is an abnormal decrease in
 the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation
 lipuria, ae f — the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria
 lymphostāsis, is f — cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis
 megacōlon, i n — a condition in which there is a great dilatation of the large
 intestine, megacolon
 menalgia, ae f — painful menstruation, menalgia
 pantalgia, ae f — pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia
 polimyelītis, itīdis f — an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal
 cord due to polioviruses, polimyelitis
 pyogēnus, a, um — forming or producing pus, pyogenic
 pyopneumothōrax, ācis m — an inflammatory condition characterized by
 the presence of purulent fluid and gas in a pleural cavity, pyopneumothorax
 pyosalpinx, ngis f — inflammation of the uterine tube which has progressed
 to pus formation, pyosalpinx
 uraemia, ae f — the condition which is associated with the retention
 of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of
 the latter, uraemia
 xanthopsia, ae f — a disturbance of color vision, when everything appears
 yellow, xanthopsia
 xanthōsis, is f — yellowish discoloration, especially of the skin, xanthosis

English-Latin vocabulary

achylia, absence of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice — achylia, ae f
 a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia —
 hypochylia, ae f
 acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain, polioencephalitis —
 polioencephalitis, itīdis f

a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea — pyorrhoea, ae f

a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia — xanthopsia, ae f

aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen — aërobion, i n

an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium — pyopericardium, i n

anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived of either free oxygen or air — anaërobion, i n

aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live — aërobĭcus, a, um

anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen — anaërobĭcus, a, um

a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis — dacryostenōsis, is f

an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea — galactorrhoea, ae f

any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate — transudātum, i n

a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis — hydrarthrōsis, is f

a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli, thromboembolia (thromboembolism) — thromboëmbolia, ae f (thromboëmbolismus, i m)

chyluria, the condition in which the urine contains lymph — chyluria, ae f

colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from the colon — colonorrhagia, ae f

cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder — cystĭtis, itĭdis f

dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears — dacryorrhoea, ae f

dropsy, an abnormal collection of fluid in tissue or cavity space — hydrops, ōpis m

dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and lower abdomen at or about the time of menses — dysmenorrhoea, ae f

embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are present in the blood — embolaemia, ae f

endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus — endometrĭtis, itĭdis f

enterogastritis, an inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach — enterogastrĭtis, itĭdis f

enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine — enteromegalia, ae f

galactostasis, an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk — galactostāsis, is f

haematosalalpinx, a collection and retention of blood in an uterine tube — haematosalalpinx, ngis f

hidrosis 1) a process of secreting sweat; 2) abnormally profuse sweating — hydrōsis, is f

hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint — hydrarthrōsis, is f

hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus — hydromētra, ae f

hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva — hypersalivatio, ōnis f

hypogalactia, secretion of too small a quantity of milk — hypogalactia, ae f

inflammation in the nail fold, panaris — panaritium, i n

inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis — endometrītis, itīdis f

inflammation of the liver, hepatitis — hepatītis, itīdis f

lymphangitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels — lymphangītis, itīdis f

lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes — lymphocytōsis, is f

panaris, an inflammation in the nail fold — panaritium, i n

paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney — paranephritīs, itīdis f

pericystitis, an inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected — pericystītis, itīdis f

pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung — pneumonia, ae f

pneumohaemothorax, an accumulation of gas or air and blood in the cavity of the thorax — pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m

polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of the brain — polioencephalopathia, ae f

profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea — rhinorrhoea, ae f

pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine — pyuria, ae f

the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax — pneumothōrax, ācis m

the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum — haemotympānum, i n

the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria — haematuria, ae f

thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli — thromboembolismus, i m

tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil — tonsillītis, itīdis f

Lesson 23

ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS

§ 143. NAMES OF ABNORMAL ADHESIONS AND FISSURES

Conditions of abnormal adhesions of tissues are signified by means of the prefix **sym-** or **syn-** (before the consonants **d, p, t** or vowels) and the final roots defining the place of malformation:

symblephāron, i n — an adhesion of eyelid to the eyeball, symblepharon

syndactylia, ae f — a condition in which two or more fingers or toes are fused, syndactylia.

One-word names of fissures are formed by means of the final root **-schĭsis**:

cystoschĭsis, is f — a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis

gnathoschĭsis, is f — a congenital fissure in the maxilla, gnathoschisis

§ 144. NAMES OF PATHOLOGICAL CAVITIES

Abscesses, cysts and hernias usually belong to pathological cavities.

Abscess (**abscessus, us m**) is an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration. This Latin noun is used mainly with adjectives:

abscessus apicalis — apical abscess, an abscess at the apex of the root of a tooth

abscessus tonsillāris — tonsillar abscess, a suppurative condition of the parenchyma of a tonsil.

Cyst (**cysta, ae f**) is a cavity lined by a well-defined epithelium, fibrous or degenerating tissue. This noun both in Latin and English is mainly used in two-word terms with adjectives and nouns:

cysta choledōchi — choledochus cyst, cystic dilatation in the common bile duct

cysta pancreatīca — pancreatic cyst, a cyst arising within or in close proximity to the pancreas.

Hernia (**hernia, ae f**) is the protrusion of an internal organ through a defect in the wall of the anatomical cavity in which it lies. The noun is used like the previous one with adjectives and nouns:

hernia cerēbri — hernia of the brain, protrusion of the brain through a defect in the skull

hernia inguinālis — inguinal hernia, hernia in the inguinal canal

In one-word terms, the idea of hernia is expressed by the final root **-cele**:

gastrocēle, es f — hernia of the stomach, gasrocele

myocēle, es f — hernia of a muscle, myocele

§ 145. NAMES OF TUMORS

Names of tumors of a definite organ or tissues are formed by means of final suffix **-ōma** added to the initial root which indicates the localization of abnormal growth. All these names are nouns of the 3rd declension:

angiōma, ātis n — angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels

nephroōma, ātis n — nephroma, a tumor derived from renal substance

osseōma, ātis n — osseoma, a tumor of bone.

Some names of innocent tumors are formed without the suffix **-oma**:

polypus, i m polypus, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface

verruca, ae f — a wart, a small circumscribed epidermal tumor.

Both nouns are used in multiword terms:

polypus laryngis — a polypus of larynx

verruca plana — a plane wart.

A malignant tumor or any malignant growth is named cancer — cancer, *crim*. This name is used with the nouns and adjectives which define localization of the tumor:

cancer cutis — cancer of the skin

cancer gastris — cancer of the stomach

cancer osteolyticus — osteolytic cancer, a cancer which destroys the bone that it has invaded.

A malignant epithelial tumor is called carcinoma — **carcinoma, ātis n**. This noun is used with adjectives mostly:

carcinoma bronchogenicum — a bronchogenic carcinoma, carcinoma originating from a bronchus

carcinoma cutaneum — carcinoma cutaneum, a squamous-celled carcinoma of the skin.

The name *carcinoma* can also be used as a final root of one-word terms:

adenocarcinoma, ātis n — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

chondrocarcinoma, ātis n — a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondrocarcinoma.

§ 146. NAMES OF CONCREMENTS

A concrement is a pathological concretion — mostly a small mass which has become calcified in a cavity or in the tissue of a hollow anatomical structure. Such a concretion is denoted in Latin by the nouns **concrementum, i n** or **calcūlus, i m** and an adjective defining the localization of the concretion:

concrementum nasāle — nasal calculus

calcūlus dentālis — dental calculus

The names of these concretions may also be expressed by one-word terms by means of the final root *-lithus* (Greek **lithos** stone) added to initial roots: *rhinolīthus, i m* = *concrementum nasāle*

odontolīthus, i m = *calcūlus dentālis*.

The condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body is called calculosis — **calculōsis, is f**. The formation of concretions is named lithiasis — **lithiāsis, is f**. The same word is used as a final root of several one-word terms:

broncholithiāsis, is f — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

cholecystolithiāsis, is f — a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct, cholelithiasis

nephrolithāsis, is f — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

urolithiāsis, is f — a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis

§ 147. NAMES OF ABNORMAL HARDENING AND SOFTENING OF TISSUES

Abnormal hardening (induration) of a tissue is expressed by the initial root **scler-** (Greek **skleros** hard) or the final element **-sclerosis**:

sclerodesmia, ae f — abnormal induration of ligaments, sclerodesmia

osteosclerōsis, is f — hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis

Abnormal softening of a tissue is expressed by the final root **-malacia** (Greek **malakia** softness):

chondromalacia, ae f — a pathological softening of a cartilage, chondromalacia

§ 148. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOTS

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
carcin-	cancer, cri m	cancer	carcin-
hist-	textus, us m	tissue	hist-
lith-	calcūlus, i m concrementum, i n	stone concretion	lith-
mening-	pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater — the membranes which form the covering or sheaths of the spinal cord and brain	pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater	mening-
morph-	forma, ae f	form	morph-
necr-	mortuus, a, um	dead, lifeless	necr-
ne(o)-	novus, a, um	new	ne(o)-
onc-	tumor, ōris m	tumor, swelling	onc-
onych-	unguis, is m	nail	onych-
pachy-	crassus, a, um	thick	pachy-
pyel-	pelvis renālis	pelvis of the kidney	pyel-
sarc-	caro, carnis f	flesh	sarc-
scler-	durus, a, um	hard, hardening	scler-
splanchn-	viscus, ěris n; viscĕra, um n	a viscus; the viscera	splanchn-
spondyl-	vertĕbra, ae f	vertebra	spondyl-
sten-	strictus, a, um	narrow, narrowing	sten-
typhl-	caecum, i n	caecum	typhl-
uran-	palātum, i n	palate	palat-, uran-

Attention! Instead of the initial Greek root **uran-** the Latin root **palat-** can be used:

palatoplegia, ae f (palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate) =
 uranoplegia, ae f (uranoplegia)

palatoschĭsis, is f (palatoschisis, cleft palate, a congenital fissure in
 the midline of the hard palate) = uranoschĭsis, is f (uranoschisis)

§ 149. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-carcinōma	a malignant epithelial tumor
-cele	hernia
-lithiāsis	the formation of concretions
- lithus	a concretion
-malacia	pathological softening of an organ or tissue
-morphōsis	any state of the body form
-necrōsis	death of a portion of a tissue
-onychia	any abnormal condition of the nail
-porōsis	abnormal rarefaction of a bone by thinning of its trabeculae
-schĭsis	congenial fissure of a tissue
-sclerōsis	hardening of a tissue
-stenōsis	the constriction or narrowing of an orifice or the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ

§ 150. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

carcin-, hist-, lith-, mening-, morph-, necr-, ne(o)-, onc-, onych-, pachy-, scler-, typhl-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

caecum, calcŭlus, cancer, crassus, durus, mortuus, palātum, pelvis renālis, strictus, textus, viscĕra.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

adenocarcinōma; broncholithiāsis; carcinomatōsis; cystoschĭsis; dacryostenōsis; gastrocĕle; histolŷsis; meningiōma; metamorphōsis; micronychia; myocĕle; necropneumonia; nephrolithiāsis; neoplasma; odontolĭthus; oncolōgus; onychomycōsis; osteonecrosis; osteoporōsis; pachydactylia; palatoplegia; pyelĭtis; sarcōma; sclerōma; splanchnosclerōsis; spondylĭtis; stenothōrax; typhlectasia; uranoschĭsis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel; a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements; any diseased condition of the viscera; calculus on the teeth; causing the growth of tumors; congenital cleft

of a vertebral arch or arches; congenital fissure of the urinary bladder; hardening of bony spaces; herniation of the uterus; inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder; inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord; paralysis affecting the soft palate; pathological softening of a cartilage; separation of a tissue as a result of its death; spasm of the caecum; the formation of concretions; the origin, formation and development of body tissue; the production and evolution of a form; the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:

adiponecrosis; angioma; calculosis; cancerogenic (=carcinogenic); carcinoma; cholecystolithiasis; chondroporosis; enterolithiasis; gnathoschisis; macronychia; meningoencephalitis; necraemia; neoarthrosis; oesophagostenosis; oncologist; oncotherapy; onychodystrophy; osteomalacia; pachycheilia; polyposis; rhinolith; sarcomatosis; sclerodermatitis; sialolith; spondylopathy; symblepharon; synphalangism; typhlocele

§ 151. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 23

Latin-English vocabulary

adenocarcinōma, ātis n — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

broncholithiās̄is, is f — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

carcinomatōsis, is f — a condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis

cystoschīsis, is f — a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis

dacryostenōsis, is f — a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis

gastrocēle, es f — a hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele

histolýsis, is f — a spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis

meningiōma, ātis n — a meningeal tumor, thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma

metamorphōsis, is f — a change of a form or structure, metamorphosis

micronychia, ae f — a small nail or small nails, micronychia

myocēle, es f — hernia of a muscle, myocele

necropneumonia, ae f — gangrene of the lung, necropneumonia

nephrolithiās̄is, is f — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

neoplasma, ātis n — any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm

odonthlīthus, im — a calculus on the teeth, odontolith

oncolōgus, i m — a specialist treating tumors, oncologist

onychomycōsis, is f — an infection of nails caused by a fungus, onychomycosis
 osteonecrōsis, is f — death of bony tissue, osteonecrōsis
 osteoporōsis, is f — a rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis
 pachydactylia, ae f — abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly
 palatoplegia, ae f — paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia
 pyelītis, itīdis f — an inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis
 sarcōma, ātis n — a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives,
 sarcoma
 sclerōma, ātis n — an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous
 membrane of the nose or larynx, scleroma
 splanchnosclerōsis, is f — hardening of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis
 spondylītis, itīdis f — an inflammation of the spine, spondylitis
 stenothōrax, ācis m — a short, narrow thorax or chest, stenothorax
 typhlectasia, ae f — a dilatation of the caecum, typhlectasia
 uranoschīsis, is f — cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard
 palate, uranoschisis

English-Latin vocabulary

a calculus on the teeth, odontolith — odontolīthus, i m
 a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements,
 chondroma — chondrōma, ātis n
 a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue,
 adenocarcinoma — adenocarcinōma, ātis n
 a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi,
 nephrolithiasis — nephrolithiāsis, is f
 a congenital cleft of a vertebral arch, spondyloschisis — spondyloschīsis, is f
 a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis — cystoschīsis, is f
 adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body — adiponecrōsis, is f
 a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma — sarcōma,
 ātis n
 a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma —
 meningiōma, ātis n
 an abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly — pachydactylia, ae f
 angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or lymphatic vessels — angiōma,
 ātis, n
 any diseased condition of the viscera, splanchnopathy — splanchnopathia, ae f
 a separation of a tissue as a result of its death, necrolysis — necrolŷsis, is f
 calculosis, a condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of
 the body — calculōsis, is f
 cancerogenic (=carcinogenic), producing carcinoma — cancerogĕnus, a, um
 carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor — carcinōma, ātis n
 causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous — oncogĕnus, a, um

cholecystolithiasis, a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct — cholecystolithiās̄is, is f
 chondroporosis, a porous condition of cartilage shown in thinning of the cartilage and formation of spaces and sinuses — chondroporō̄sis, is f
 enterolithiasis, formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine — enterolithiās̄is, is f
 gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla — gnathoschī̄sis, is f
 hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis — osteosclerō̄sis, is f
 herniation of the uterus, metrocele — metrocē̄le, es f
 inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis — pyelocystīt̄is, itī̄dis f
 inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis — meningīt̄is, itī̄dis f
 macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails — macronychia, ae f
 meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges — meningoencephalitis, itī̄dis f
 necraemia, a condition in which the blood loses its vitality — necraemia, ae f
 neoarthrosis, an artificial joint implanted by the surgical operation — neoarthrō̄sis, is f
 oesophagostenosis, a narrowing of the oesophagus — oesophagostenō̄sis, is f
 oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases — oncolō̄gus, i m
 oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours — oncotherapia, ae f
 onychodystrophy, malformation of the nails due to impaired nutrition — onychodystrophia, ae f
 osteomalacia, softening of the bones — osteomalacia, ae f
 pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of the lips — pachycheilia, ae f
 paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia — palatoplegia, ae f
 pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia — chondromalacia, ae f
 polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane — polypō̄sis, ls f
 production of urinary calculi and a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis — urolithiās̄is, is f
 rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose — rhinolī̄thus, i m
 sarcomatosis, a condition in which a number of sarcomata develop here and there on the body surface — sarcomatō̄sis, is f
 sclerodermatitis, an inflammation and induration of the skin — sclerodermatīt̄is, itī̄dis f
 sialolith, a salivary calculus — sialolī̄thus, i m
 spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm — typhlospasmus, i m
 spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae — spondylopathia, ae f
 symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball — symblephā̄ron, i n

synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused — synphalangismus, i m
the formation of concretions, lithiasis — lithiāsis, is f
the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis — histogenēsis, is f
the production and evolution of a form, morphogenesis — morphogenēsis, is f
typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum — typhlocēle, es f

Lesson 24

NAMES OF DEFORMATIONS OF TISSUE CAUSED BY EXOGENOUS FACTORS. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS

§ 152. GENERAL NAMES OF TISSUE DEFORMATIONS CAUSED BY DIFFERENT EXOGENOUS FACTORS

The most known general names of tissue deformations are the following one-word terms:

deformatio, ōnis f — a destruction of the form, deformation

laesio, ōnis f — an injury, damage suffered by the body

trauma, ātis n — a trauma, injury

vulnus, ěris n — a wound, any interruption by violence or by surgery, in the continuity of the external surface of the body or of the surface of any internal organ

More definite names are the following one-word terms:

avulsio, ōnis f — avulsion, a forcible removal of a portion from a hollow structure

combustio, ōnis f — burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat

congelatio, ōnis f — congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing

commotio, ōnis f — a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure

compressio, ōnis f — compression, the process of decreasing the volume and increasing the density of the body by means of force applied externally

dislocatio, ōnis f — a dislocation, an abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint

ectopia, ae f — ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part

fractūra, ae f — a fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone

luxatio, ōnis f — a luxation, a dislocation of a bone

ruptūra, ae f — a rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or another anatomical structure. With the same meaning, but only in one-word terms, the final root **-rrhexis** (Greek rhexis a break) is used:

metrorrhexis, is f — metrorrhexis, rupture of the uterus

ophthalmorrhexis, is f — ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball
prolapsus, us m — prolapse, a sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part. With the same meaning the final root **-ptōsis** is used:

gastroptōsis, is f — gastroptosis, a downward displacement of the stomach
splenoptōsis, is f — splenoptosis, a prolapse of the spleen

§ 153. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS

The most common names of surgical operations are the following:

operatio, ōnis f — an operation, surgical intervention upon a part of the body

amputatio, ōnis f — an amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage

extirpatio, ōnis f — an extirpation, a removal of the entire pathological structure, organ or part

extractio, ōnis f — an extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body

implantatio, ōnis f — an implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body

punctūra, ae f (punctio, ōnis f) — a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it. In one-word terms, the final root **-centēsis** corresponds to the two-word terms which include the noun **puncture** and the second noun signifying the site of this operation, e. g.:

punctūra thorācis = thoracocentēsis punctūra pulmōnis = pneumocentēsis

replantatio, ōnis f — replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place.

transplantatio, ōnis f — a transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing the function

resectio, ōnis f — a resection, a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.

sectio, ōnis f — a section, the act of cutting

§ 154. PREFIXES WIDELY USED IN SURGICAL NAMES

Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent and its meaning
a-, ab-	away, from	avulsio, ōnis f aberratio, ōnis f	avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure aberration, a deviation from the normal
de(s)-	away, from	decapsulatio, ōnis f descensus, us m	decapsulation, surgical removal of a capsule or sheath descent, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part

Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent and its meaning
dis-	apart, separation	disarticulatio, ōnis f	disarticulation, separation or amputation in a joint without cutting through bone
im-, in-	in, into	implantātum, i n invasio, ōnis f	implant, any piece of tissue for use as a graft invasion, the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host
e-, ex-	from, out of	extractio, ōnis f evisceratio, ōnis f	extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body evisceration, removal of the contents of an organ or its part
re-	again	replantatio, ōnis f	replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place
trans-	through, across	transplantatio, ōnis f	transplantation, the operation of transfer of tissue from one site to another

§ 155. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOTS

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
blephar-	palpēbra, ae f	eyelid	blephar-
chir-	manus, us f	hand	chir-
colp-	vagīna, ae f	vagina	colp-
cry-	gelu, us n	cold	cry-
crypt-	latens, ntis	hidden	crypt-
desm-	ligamentum, i n	ligament	desm-
embryo-	1) embryo, ōnis m 2) fetus, us m	1) embryo, a living organism from the fertilized ovum to the first 8 weeks of intrauterine life 2) fetus, a living organism after first 8 weeks of intrauterine life	embryo-
kerat-	cornea, ae f	1) cornea 2) the horny layer of the skin	kerat-
lapar-	abdōmen, ĩnis n	abdomen	lapar-
pneum-, pneumon-	pulmo, ōnis m	lung	pneum-, pneumon-
salping-	1) tuba uterīna 2) tuba auditīva (=tuba auditoria)	1) the uterine tube 2) the pharyngotympanic tube (=auditory tube)	salping-
ten-	tendo, ĩnis m	tendon	ten-
top-	locus, i m	place	top-

§ 156. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

Final roots elements	English meaning
-chirurgia	surgical operation
-centēsis	tapping or puncture of a cavity, -centesis
-dēsīs	operative fixation of a structure, -desis
-ectomia	amputation or excision of an organ or its part, -ectomy
-implantatio	the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, -implantation
-lysis	surgical freeing of a tissue from adhesions
-pexia	surgical fixation by means of sutures, -pexis, -pexy
-plastīca	an operation dependent upon the transposition of skin or other tissue, -plasty
-rrhaphia	the suturing together of the cut or torn edges of a wound, -rrhaphy
-rrhexis	rupture or bursting of an organ or vessel, -rhexis
-stōma	an artificial opening created by surgical operation
-stomia	creation of an artificial opening, -stomy
-tomia	operative cutting, incision or section, -tomy
-transplantatio	the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function, -transplantation

§ 157. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

blephar-, chir-, colp-, cry-, crypt-, desm-, embryo-, kerat-, lapar-, pneum-, salping-, ten-, top-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

abdōmen, cornea, embryo, gelu, latens, locus, manus, palpēbra, pulmo, tendo, tuba uterīna.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English the full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

avulsio; blepharītis; blepharoplastīca; colpotomia; combustio; cryochirurgia; cryotherapia; cryptophthalmia; decapsulatio; descensus; desmorrhaxis; desmurgia; disarticulatio; embryologia; embryotomia; evisceratio; gastrostōma; hyperkeratōsis; implantatio; implantātum; keratotomia; laparoscopia; laparogastrostomia; pneumocentēsis; prolapsus; pneumoēmpyēma; replantatio; resectio; salpingectomy; salpingolysis; spondylodēsis; tenorrhaphia; tenotomia; thoracocentēsis; toponeurōsis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure; adenoma of the eyelid; a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative

treatment of diseases of the nervous system; a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum; any disease affecting ligaments; any morbid condition affecting the lungs; any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder; any plastic surgical operation on the vagina; a tumor consisting of connective-tissue element; incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus; inflammation of abdominal muscles; inflammation of the cornea; polypus of the vagina; puncture of the cornea; removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part; retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital acquired genital-canal stenosis; surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope; the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body; the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host; the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the size of the latter; the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision; the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing a function; the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder; total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue; use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure

5. Give the full definition of each term and its Latin dictionary form:

arthrocentesis; autoplasty; blepharotomy; colpocystotomy; colpomymectomy; colpohysteropexy; congelation; cryosurgery; cryptolith; cryptopsoriasis; desmalgia; desmotomy; dislocation; ectopia; embryectomy; embryopathology; implant; implantation; keratomycosis; keratoplasty; oesophagostoma; pneumorrhaphy; pneumotomy; puncture; salpingogram; salpingopexy; tenodesis; tenolysis; tonsillotomy; topography; topophobia

§ 158. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 24

Latin-English vocabulary

avulsio, ōnis f — a forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion

blepharītis, itīdis f — an inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis

blepharoplastīca, ae f — a plastic operation for restoration of an eyelid or any part of it, blepharoplasty

colpotomia, ae f — any cutting operation on the vagina, colpotomy

combustio, ōnis f — an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat, burn

cryochirurgia, ae f — surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing, cryosurgery

cryotherapia, ae f — the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy

cryptophthalmia, ae f — a congenital adhesion of the eyelids so that the eyeballs can not be seen, cryptophthalmia

decapsulatio, ōnis f — a surgical removal of a capsule or sheath, decapsulation
 descensus, us m — the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, descent
 desmorrhæxis, is f — rupture of a ligament, desmorrhæxis
 desmurgia, æ f — the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part,
 desmurgy
 disarticulatio, ōnis f — a separation or amputation at a joint, without cutting
 through bone, disarticulation
 embryologia, æ f — a branch of biological science which is concerned with
 the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of
 extra-uterine life, embryology
 embryotomia, æ f — a dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy
 evisceratio, ōnis f — a removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration
 gastrostōma, ātis n — a natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma
 hyperkeratōsis, is f — a hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin,
 hyperkeratosis
 implantatio, ōnis f — the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with
 the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, implantation
 keratotomia, æ f — making an incision into the cornea, keratotomy
 laparoscopia, æ f — the act or process of examining the peritoneal cavity and its
 contents by means of a laparoscope, laparoscopy
 laparogastrostomia, æ f — the operation to create an artificial opening in the
 stomach, laparogastrostomy
 pneumocentēsis, is f — a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of
 a cavity, pneumocentesis
 pneumoëmpyēma, ātis n — the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space,
 pneumoëmpyema
 prolapsus, us m — the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part,
 prolapse
 replantatio, ōnis f — the replacement a separated by accident part of some
 anatomical structure back to its natural place, a replantation
 resectio, ōnis f — a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g.
 jaw, stomach, etc., a resection
 salpingectomia, æ f — an excision of an uterine tube, salpingectomy
 salpingolýsis, is f — breaking-down of adhesions in an uterine tube,
 salpingolysis
 spondylodēsis, is f — the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone
 graft, spondylodesis
 tenorrhaphia, æ f — an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of
 a tendon, tenorrhaphy
 tenotomia, æ f — the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy
 thoracocentēsis, is f — a puncture of the wall of the thorax to remove fluid,
 thoracocentesis

toponeurōsis, is f — localized neurosis, a functional derangement in any part of the body, toponeurosis

English-Latin vocabulary

a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure — commotio, ōnis f
adenoma of the eyelid, blepharoadenoma — blepharoadenōma, ātis n
a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, a neurosurgeon — neurochirurgus, i m
a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum, an embryoneoplasm — embryoneoplasma, ātis n
any disease affecting the ligaments, desmopathia — desmopathia, ae f
any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy — pneumopathia, ae f
any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder, cystoplasty — cystoplastīca, ae f
any plastic surgical operation on the vagina, colpoplasty — colpoplastīca, ae f
a polypus of the vagina, colpopolypus — colpopolŷpus, i m
a prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part — prolapsus, us m
a puncture of the cornea, keratocentesis — keratocentēsis, is f
arthrocentesis, the surgical procedure of puncturing a joint — arthrocentēsis, is f
a surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope, microsurgery — microchirurgia, ae f
a tumor consisting of connective tissue, desmoneoplasm — desmoneoplasma, ātis n
autoplasty, the repair of a diseased or injured tissue or organ by the material taken from another part of the body — autoplastīca, ae f
blepharotomy, an incision of an eyelid — blepharotomia, ae f
colpocystotomy, a surgical incision into the urinary bladder through the wall of the vagina — colpocystotomia, ae f
colpohysteropexy, the operative fixation of the uterus through the vagina — colpohysteropexia, ae f
colpomyomectomy, a removal of a myoma from the uterus by the vaginal route — colpomyomectomia, ae f
congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing — congelatio, ōnis f
cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing — cryochirurgia, ae f
cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt — cryptolīthus, i m
cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis — cryptopsoriāsīsis, is f
desmalgia, pain in a ligament — desmalgia, ae f

dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint —
 dislocatio, ōnis f
 ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ
 or its part — ectopia, ae f
 embryotomy, the surgical removal of the embryo — embryectomia, ae f
 embryopathology, the branch of pathology concerned with defective or
 abnormal development of embryo — embryopathologia, ae f
 implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft — implantātum, i n
 incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysterectomy —
 laparohysterectomy, ae f
 inflammation of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis — laparomyosītis,
 itīdis f
 keratomycosis, a disease of cornea caused by a fungus — keratomycōsis, is f
 keratoplasty, plastic surgery on the cornea — keratoplastīca, ae f
 oesophagostoma, any opening into the esophagus apart from the normal
 entrance and exit — oesophagostōma, ātis n
 ophthalmorrhaxis, rupture of the eyeball — ophthalmorrhaxis, is f
 pneumocentesis, a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity —
 pneumocentēsis, is f
 pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space —
 pneumoēmpyēma, ātis n
 pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung —
 pneumorrhaphia, ae f
 pneumotomy, making an incision into the lung — pneumotomia, ae f
 puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish
 the nature of its content or to empty it — punctūra, ae f; punctio, ōnis f
 removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation —
 amputatio, ōnis f
 retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital canal
 stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea — cryptomenorrhoea, ae f
 removal of an entire pathological structure, an organ or part, extirpation —
 extirpatio, ōnis f
 salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of
 the uterus and uterine tubes — salpingogramma, ātis n
 salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube — salpingopexia, ae f
 tenodesis, operative fixation of a tendon — tenodēsis, is f
 tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions — tenolýsis, is f
 the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction —
 extractio, ōnis f
 the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion —
 invasio, ōnis f

the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body — implantatio, ōnis f

the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the latter, herniotomia — herniotomia, ae f

the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomy — adenotomia, ae f

the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing of a function, transplantation — transplantatio, ōnis f

the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder, cystostomy — cystostomia, se f

tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil — tonsillotomia, ae f

topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body — topographia, ae f

topophobia, unreasoned fear of certain places — topophobia, ae f

total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy — pneumonectomia, ae f

use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy — cryotherapia, ae f

Lesson 25

MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 1

§ 159. THE STRUCTURE AND VOCABULARY OF MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS

Multiword terms are widely used in medical diagnoses. Any multiword term consists, as a rule, of two or three words. The noun containing the cardinal information of the term is placed first, and then one or two nouns or one or two adjectives follow. The second and third nouns indicate the localization of the diseased organ or tissue; adjectives give qualitative and quantitative characteristics of the morbid condition:

infarctus cerēbri — cerebral infarct, an infarct of cerebral tissue due to failure of blood supply resulting from vascular thrombosis, embolism or spasm

tachycardia ventricūli sinistri — tachycardia of the left ventricle, abnormally rapid rate of the left ventricle

anaemia haemorrhagīca — haemorrhagic anaemia, anaemia caused by acute or chronic loss of blood because of whatever cause

myocardītis bacterialis acuta — acute bacterial myocarditis, acute inflammation of the myocardium due to invasion of bacteria

The combination of a noun and an adjective after the first noun of the term can be present too:

cirrhōsis biliāris infantium — biliary cirrhosis of children, cirrhosis of young children due to congenital anomalies of the bile ducts

luxatio coxae congenīta — congenital dislocation of the hip

To sum up, we can say that multiword clinical terms are built similar to anatomical ones. First of all, the dictionary form of every word should be given. After that, the term is built according to the already known rules.

§ 160. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

abdōmen acūtum; *diabētes* mellītus; diagnōsis aetiologīca; febris continua; fetor ex ore sive *halitōsis*; herpes labiālis; indigestio gastris; *infarctus* thrombotīcus; insufficientia renālis chronīca; morbus maculōsus neonatōrum; *palpatio* et *percussio* hepātis; *polyuria* diabetīca; *prophylaxis* morbōrum allergicōrum; *syndrōmum* unguium flavōrum; *toxicōses* gravidārum; vitium cordis congenītum

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

acute suppurative *bronchitis*; allergic *stomatitis*; cardinal *symptoms*; cerebrospinal hereditary *paralysis*; chronic superficial *dermatitis*; *collapse* of the lung; *endogenous eczema*; *exogenous* tuberculosis; hypoglycaemic *coma*; intermittent hepatic fever; plasma *transfusion*; primary atypical *pneumonia*; simple *urethritis*; spongiform subacute *encephalopathy*; *syndrome* of the cerebral peduncle; tissue *emphysema*; ultrasonic *tomography*

§ 161. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 25

Latin-English vocabulary

acūtus, a, um — acute

aetiologīcus, a, um — aetiologic, based on the aetiology — the science of the investigation of the cause or origin of any phenomenon

chronīcus, a, um — chronic, long continued

congenītus, a, um — congenital

continuus, a, um — continued

diabētes, ae m — diabetes, a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism

diabetīcus, a, um — diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes

diagnōsis, is f — diagnosis, medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers

febris, is f — fever

foetor, ōris m — fetor, a foul odour or stench

gravīda, ae f — gravida, a woman who is pregnant

halitōsis, is f — halitosis, fetid or offensive breath

herpes, ētis m — herpes, inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles

indigestio, ōnis f — indigestion, any disturbance of the normal process of digestion

infarctus, us m — infarct (infarction), a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery

insufficiētia, ae f — insufficiency, the state of being inadequate to perform normal function

mellītus, a, um (diabētes) — mellitus (diabetes), characterized by a high — fasting blood sugar

maculōsus, a, um — a maculate, marked by maculae

morbus, i m — a disease

neonātus, a, um — a newly born child

palpatio, ōnis f — palpation, the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs

percussio, ōnis f — percussion, the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed

polyuria, ae f — polyuria, increase in the amount of the urine excreted

prophylaxis, is f — prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease

sive — or

syndrōmum, i n — a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease

thrombotīcus, a, um — thrombotic, characterized or caused by thrombosis

toxicōsis, is f — toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison

vitium, in — a defect or a vice, vitium

English-Latin vocabulary

acute — acūtus, a, um

alimentary — alimentarius, a, um

a symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function — symptōma, ātis n

a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease — syndrōmum, i n

a tissue — textus, us m

a transfusion, the introduction into the blood vessels of the circulatory system of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions — transfusio, ōnis f

cardinal — cardinālis, e

chronic — chronīcus, a, um

collapse, a state of extreme weakness with physical and mental depression —
 collapsus, us m
 coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot
 be roused by any ordinary external stimulus — coma, ātis n
 eczema, a non-contagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching
 and burning — eczēma, ātis n
 emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated —
 emphysēma, ātis n
 endogenous, having origin within the organism — endogēnus, a, um
 exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism — exogēnus,
 a, um
 fever — febris, is f
 hereditary — hereditarius, a, um
 hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycaemia,
 a low blood sugar concentration — hypoglycaemīcus, a, um
 intermittent, coming and going at intervals — intermittens, ntis
 paralysis, loss of motor power due to a functional or organic disorder of neural
 or neuromuscular mechanism — paralýsis, is f
 plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are
 suspended — plasma, ātis n
 pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung — pneumonia, ae f
 peduncle — pedunculū, i m
 primary — primarius, a, um
 spongiform, having resemblance to a sponge — spongiformis, e
 subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which
 the word acute would not be appropriate — subacūtus, a, um
 suppurative, pus-forming — suppuratīvus, a, um
 tomography, body-section radiography — tomographia, ae f
 ultrasonic, ultrasound — ultrasonarius, a, um

Lesson 26

MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 2

§ 162. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

alopecia occipitālis neonatōrum; *gastrorrhoea* continua chronica; *granulōma* benignum glandūlae thyroideae; *infectio* latens; infammatiō bacteriālis; insufficientia arteriārum mesentericārum; *lymphangiōma* simplex; *melanōsis* irīdis; *myasthenia* laryngis; *myelītis* traumātica; *neuralgia* faciālis vera; *neuritīs* puerperālis; *osteītis* deformans; *osteōma* spongiōsum; *prolapsus* recti; *psychōsis* senīlis; situs viscērum inversus; *spasmus* intestinōrum

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

acquired immune deficiency *syndrome* (AIDS); benign lymphocytic *meningitis*; cerebral *oedema*; chronic *glossitis* with *anaemia*; diffuse *goitre*; direct *metastasis*; *dropsy* of the gall bladder; fetal gigantism; geminated composite *odontome*; intravenous *narcosis*; infective *hepatitis*; monostotic fibrous *dysplasia*; odontogenic *fibroma*; pelvic *haematoma*; postoperative *thrombosis*; *psychogenic* headache; secondary *glaucoma*; senile *osteoporosis*; viral *enteritis*

§ 163. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 26

Latin-English vocabulary

alopecia, ae f — alopecia, loss of hair
bacteriālis, e — bacterial, belonging to or consisting of bacteria
benignus, a, um — benign
continuus, a, um — continued
deformans, ntis — deforming
gastrorrhoea, ae f — gastrorrhoea, the secretion by the stomach of an abnormally large quantity of gastric juice or of mucus
granulōma, ātis n — a granuloma, a tumour composed of granulation tissue
infectio, ōnis f — an infection, the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication
inflammatio, ōnis f — an inflammation
insufficiētia, ae f — insufficiency
inversus, a, um — inverse
latens, ntis — hidden
lymphangiōma, ātis n — lymphangioma, a tumor formed of lymphatic tissue
mesenterīcus, a, um — mesenteric
melanōsis, is f — melanosis, an abnormal deposition of the black pigment (melanin) in the skin or other tissues
myasthenia, ae f — myasthenia, weakness of muscles from whatever cause
myelītis, itīdis f — myelitis, an inflammation of the bone marrow
neuralgia, ae f — neuralgia, a painful affection of the nerves due to functional disturbances or to neuritis
neurītis, itīdis f — neuritis, an inflammation of a nerve
osteītis, itīdis f — osteitis, an inflammation of a bone due to infection or injury
osteōma, ātis n — osteoma, an innocent tumor of a bone
prolapsus, us m — prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a part or viscus
psychōsis, is f — psychosis, any kind of mental disorder
puerperālis, e — puerperal
senīlis, e — senile
situs, us m — a position, a site

spasmus, i m — a spasm, a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of a muscle
 spongiōsus, a, um — spongy, (spongious), full of small holes, like a sponge
 traumaticus, a, um — traumatic
 verus, a, um — true
 viscus, ěris n — a viscus or viscera, the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities — pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

English-Latin vocabulary

acquired — acquisītus, a, um
 benign — benignus, a, um
 composite — composītus, a, um
 deficiency — deficientia, ae f
 diffuse — diffūsus, a, um
 direct — directus, a, um
 dropsy — hydrops, ōpis m
 dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue — dysplasia, ae f
 enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines — enterītis, itīdis f
 fetal — fetalis, e
 fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue — fibrōma, ātis n
 fibrous — fibrōsus, a, um
 geminated — geminātus, a, um
 gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness — gigantismus, i m
 glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences — glaucōma, ātis n
 glossitis, an inflammation of the tongue — glossītis, itīdis f
 goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland — struma, ae f
 headache — dolor (ōris m) capitis
 haematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood — haematōma, ātis n
 immune — immūnus, a, um
 immunodeficiency — immunodeficientia, ae f
 infective — infectīvus, a, um
 intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um
 lymphocytic — lymphocytīcus, a, um
 metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity — metastāsis, is f
 monostotic, pertaining to a single bone — monostotīcus, a, um
 narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis — narcōsis, is f

odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells concerned in tooth development — odontōma, ātis n
odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth — odontogēnus, a, um
oedema, the presense of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body — oedēma, ātis n
osteoporosis, a rarefaction of bone — osteoporōsis, is f
postoperative — postoperatīvus, a, um
psychogenic, developing or originating because of mental causes — psychogēnus, a, um
secondary — secundarius, a, um
senile — senīlis, e
thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life, producing a thrombus — thrombōsis, is f
viral — virālis, e

Lesson 27 MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 3

§ 164. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

abscessus gingivālis; *avulsio* nervi phrenīci; calcūlus venōsus; *carcinōma* in situ; *combustio* thermālis faciēi; *commotio* cerēbri; *congelatio* digitōrum pedis dextri; *ectopia* oculi; *erosio* cervīcis utēri; *extractio* corpōris aliēni; *polypi* laryngis; *punctio* lumbālis; ruptūra ligamentōrum hepātis; *sectio* cadavēris; *transplantātum* corneae; ulcus perfōrans duodēni; *verrūcae* planae

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

breast *amputation*; chemical burn of the oesophagus; closed fracture of the right femur; *concussion* of the retina; *evisceration* of the eye; functional aortic *stenosis*; internal injury; lung calculi; open operation; partial *ophthalmoplegy*; *resection* of a joint and a rib; splenic *puncture*; subcutaneous wound; *replantation* of the left hand; tendon *transplantation*; traumatic *erythema*; *ulceration* of the stomach

§ 165. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 27

Latin-English vocabulary

abscessus, us m — abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration
aliēnus, a, um — foreign
avulsio, ōnis f — avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a follow structure

combustio, ōnis f — burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat
 commotio, ōnis f — a concussion or a violent shaking of a structure
 congelatio, ōnis f — congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing
 ectopia, ae f — ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part
 erosio, ōnis f — erosion, any superficial destructive process
 extractio, ōnis f — extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body
 gingivālis, e — gingival
 partialis, e — partial
 planus, a, um — plane
 phrenīcus, a, um — phrenic
 perfōrans, ntis — perforating
 polypus, i m — a polyp, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface
 punctio, ōnis f — a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it
 ruptūra, ae f — rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of a bone or another structure
 sectio, ōnis f — a section, the act of cutting
 sectio cadavēris — a post-mortem examination of dead body
 thermalis, e — thermal
 transplantātum, i n — a transplant, a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another
 verrūca, ae f — a wart

English-Latin vocabulary

amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage — amputatio, ōnis f
 aortic — aortīcus, a, um
 breast — mamma, ae f
 burn — combustio, ōnis f
 calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion — calcūlus, i m
 chemical — chemīcus, a, um
 closed — clausus, a, um
 concussion, a violent shaking of a structure — commotio, ōnis f
 erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia — erythēma, ātis n
 fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone — fractūra, ae f
 functional — functionālis, e
 injury — laesio, ōnis f

open — apertus, a, um
 operation — operatio, ōnis f
 ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles — ophthalmoplegia, ae f
 partial — partiālis, e
 puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it — punctio, ōnis f
 resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc. — resectio, ōnis f
 splenic — splenīcus, a, um

§ 166 MODEL (SAMPLE) OF THE FINAL TEST IN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

1. *Give Greek initial roots and Latin equivalents (in the dictionary form) with the following meaning:*

1) ear; 2) child; 3) head; 4) voice; 5) quick; 6) short; 7) many; 8) lacrimal sac

2. *Compose one-word terms with the dictionary form with the following meaning:*

1) specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; 2) results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; 3) any kind of pain affecting a joint; 4) any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; 5) the origin and development of bone marrow; 6) a person with an unusually small size of head; 7) acute inflammation of the gray mater of the brain; 8) calculus on the teeth

3. *Write down the Latin dictionary form and give the full definition of the following terms in English:*

1) iatrogenic; 2) psychiatrist; 3) apnea; 4) phlebography; 5) erythema; 6) megaduodenum; 7) galactostasis; 8) typhlocele

4. *Give the dictionary form of each word and the full definition of italicized words; translate into Latin the multiword terms:*

1) acquired immune deficiency *syndrome*; 2) secondary *glaucoma*; 3) *replantation* of the left hand; 4) partial *ophthalmoplegy*; 5) chemical burn of the oesophagus; 6) *dropsy* of the gall bladder; 7) monostotic fibrous *dysplasia*; 8) benign lymphocytic *meningitis*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

abdōmen, ĩnis n abdomen

abscessus, us m an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration, abscess

achlorhydria, ae f complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria

acūtus, a, um acute

adenalgia, ae f a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia

adenasthenia, ae f functional deficiency in a gland, adenasthenia

adenocarcinōma, ātis n

a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

aërobion, i n a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen during growth, aerobe, aerobion

aetiologĭcus, a, um aetiologic, based on the aetiology — the science of the investigation of the cause or origin

aliēnus, a, um foreign

allergĭcus, a, um allergic

alopecia, ae f loss of hair, alopecia

amenorrhoea, ae f the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea

amnesia, ae f loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia

anaërobion, i n a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply being deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe

anaesthesiolōgus, i m a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anaesthesiologist

angiopathia, ae f any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy

anthropogēnus, a, um caused by human activities

anthropologia, ae f anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution

anthropolōgus, i m anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution

apodia, ae f congenital absence of feet, apodia

arteria, ae f artery

arthromalacia, ae f softening of the joints, arthromalacia

asthenia, ae f loss of vital forces, asthenia

autohaemotherapia, ae f a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy

autopepsia, ae f the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia

avulsio, ōnis f the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion

B

bacteriālis, e bacterial, originating or derived from, belonging to or consisting of bacteria

benignus, a, um benign

biologia, ae f biology, science
 studying forms of life and living
 organisms

blepharītis, itīdis f inflammation
 of the eyelids, blepharitis

blepharoplastīca, ae f a plastic
 operation to restore an eyelid

brachycephālus, i m an individual
 with disproportionately short head,
 brachycephalic

brachydactylia, ae f a condition in
 which there are abnormally short
 fingers or toes, brachydactylia

bradyphagia, ae f slowing of
 swallowing, bradyphagia

bradypnoë, ës f an abnormally slow
 rate of breathing, bradypnoea

broncholithiāsis, is f the condition in
 which calculi occur in the lumen of
 bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

C

cadāver, ěris n a corpse; a lifeless
 human body

calcūlus, i m a solid pathological
 concretion, usually of inorganic
 matter, formed in any part of
 the body, calculus

carcinōma, ātis n a malignant
 epithelial tumor, carcinoma

carcinomatōsis, is f the condition
 in which carcinoma is widely
 distributed throughout the body,
 carcinomatosis

cardiogēnus, a, um cardiogenic,
 arising because of the heart

cardiolōgus, i m a specialist treating
 heart diseases, cardiologist

cerēbrum, i n cerebrum

cervix, īcis f cervix

cholecystītis, itīdis f inflammation
 of the gallbladder, cholecystitis

chondropathia, ae f any disease
 affecting a cartilage, chondropathy

chronīcus, a, um chronic, long
 continued

chylothōrax, ācis m the condition
 in which there is an effusion of
 the lymph into the thoracic cavity,
 chylothorax

colpotomia, ae f any cutting
 operation on the vagina,
 colpotomy

combustio, ōnis f burn, an injury
 caused by heat or by chemical
 or physical agents having
 an effect similar to heat

commotio, ōnis f a concussion or
 a violent shaking of a structure

congelatio, ōnis f congelation,
 frostbite, a local morbid condition
 caused by freezing

congenītus, a, um congenital

continuus, a, um continued

cor, cordis n heart

cornea, ae f cornea

corpus, ōris n body

craniometria, ae f measurement
 of the skull, craniometry

cryochirurgia, ae f surgical
 procedures in which tissue is
 destroyed by freezing, cryosurgery

cryotherapia, ae f the science
 of the use of cold as a therapeutic
 measure, cryotherapy

cryptophthalmia, ae f congenital
 adhesion of the eyelids so that
 the eyeballs can not be seen,
 cryptophthalmia

cystorrhagia, ae f haemorrhage from
 the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia

cystoschīsis, is f a congenital fissure
 of urinary bladder, cystoschisis

D

dacryostenōsis, is f narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis

dactylospasmus, ae f spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm

decapsulatio, ōnis f surgical removal of a capsule or sheath, decapsulation

deformans, ntis deforming

dermatomycōsis, is f a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi

dermatōsis, is f any disease of the skin, dermatosis

descensus, us m the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, descent

desmorrhēxis, is f rupture of a ligament, desmorrhēxis

desmurgia, ae f the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part, desmurgy

dexter, tra, trum right

diabētes, ae m anyone of a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism, diabetes

diabetīcus, a, um diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes

diagnōsis, is f medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers, diagnosis

digītus, i m finger, toe

disarticulatio, ōnis f separation or amputation in a joint, without cutting through bone, disarticulation

dolichocephalia, ae f the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia

duodēnum, i n duodenum

dysgeusia, ae f impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia

dysthyreōsis, is f imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

E

ectopia, ae f a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part, ectopia

embryologia, ae f the branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extrauterine life, embryology

embryotomia, ae f dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy

empyēma, ātis n a collection of pus in a cavity, empyema

encephalogramma, ātis n any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram

enterocolītis, itīdis f an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis

erosio, ōnis f any superficial destructive process, erosion

erythropenia, ae f a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

evisceratio, ōnis f removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration

extractio, ōnis f the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body, extraction

F

faciālis, e facial
facies, ēi f face
febris, is f fever
fetor, ōris m a foul odour or stench, fetor

G

galactorrhoea, ae f an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea
gaster, tris f stomach
gastrocēle, es f hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele
gastrorrhoea, ae f the secretion by the stomach of an abnormally large quantity of gastric juice or of mucus, gastrorrhoea
gastrospasmus, i m an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm
gastrostōma, ātis n natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma
geriāter, tri m a specialist treating diseases of the aged, geriatrician
glandŭla, ae f gland
gingivālis, e gingival
glossoplegia, ae f paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia
glycaemia, ae f a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia
granulōma, ātis n a tumour composed of granulation tissue, granuloma
gravīda, ae f a woman who is pregnant, gravida
gynaecolōgus, i m a specialist for treatment genital diseases in women, gynecologist

H

haemarthrōsis, sis f extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis
haematologia, ae f branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases, hematology
halitōsis, is f fetid or offensive breath, halitosis
hemianopsia, ae f (=hemianopia, ae f) loss of half the vision in each eye, hemianopsia (hemianopia)
hemicrania, ae f a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania
hemiplegia, ae f paralysis of one half of the body, hemiplegia
hepar, ātis n liver
herpes, ētis m inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles, herpes
hidradenītis, itīdis f inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis
histolŷsis, is f spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis
hydromētra, ae f an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra
hyperaemia, ae f an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia
hyperkeratōsis, is f hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin, hyperkeratosis
hyperthermia, ae f very high body temperature, hyperthermia
hypochylia, ae f a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia
hyposalivatio, ōnis f a condition in which there is abnormal decrease

in the secretion of saliva,
hyposalivation

hypotonia, ae f lessened tension in
any body structure, hypotonia

I

iatrogēnus, a, um happening
because of the physician's manner
or injudicious remarks, iatrogenic

implantatio, ōnis f the introduction
of one tissue or structure into
another with the aim of improving
the function of any part of
the body, implantation

implantātum, i n implant, any piece
of tissue for use as a graft

indigestio, ōnis f any disturbance
of the normal process of digestion,
indigestion

infarctus, us m a wedge-shaped
area of dead tissue, with or without
haemorrhage, produced by
the obstruction of an end artery,
infarct, infarction

infectio, ōnis f the invasion of
a pathogenic organism into
the body and its subsequent
multiplication, infection

inflammatio, ōnis f inflammation

insufficiētia, ae f the state of being
inadequate to perform normal
function, insufficiency

intestīnum, i n intestine

inversus, a, um inverse

iris, ĩdis f iris

K

keratotomia, ae f making an incision
into the cornea, keratotomy

L

labiālis, e labial

laparogastrostomia, ae f

the operation to create an artificial
opening in the stomach,
laparogastrostomy

laparoscopia, ae f the act or process
of examining the peritoneal cavity
and its contents by means of
a laparoscope, laparoscope

larynx, yngis m larynx

latens, ntis hidden

leucocytōsis, is f an increase in
the total number of leucocytes
in the blood, leucocytōsis

ligamentum, i n ligament

lipuria, ae f the presence of an oily
emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria

lumbālis, e lumbar

lymphangiōma, ātis n a tumor
formed of lymphatic tissue,
lymphangioma

lymphostāsis, is f cessation of
the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

M

maculōsus, a, um maculate, marked
by maculae

mastogramma, ātis n result of breast
X-ray examination, mastogram

megacōlon, i n a condition in which
there is great dilatation of the large
intestine, megacolon

melanoderma, ātis n a condition
in which there is an unusually
large accumulation of melanin
in the skin, melanoderma

melanōsis, is f an abnormal
deposition of the black pigment
(melanin) in the skin or other
tissues, melanososis

mellītus, a, um (diabētes) mellitus
(diabetes) characterized by a high-
fasting blood sugar

menalgia, ae f painful menstruation,
menalgia

meningiōma, ātis n a meningeal
tumor, thought to arise from
the arachnoidal villi, meningioma

mesenterīcus, a, um mesenteric

metamorphōsis, is f change of form
or structure, metamorphosis

microgenia, ae f a condition in
which the chin is of unusually
small size, microgenia

micromyelia, ae f general reduction
in size of the spinal cord,
micromyelia

micronychia, ae f small nail or nails,
micronychia

monodactylismus, i m a congenital
condition in which one finger
or toe only is present on the hand
or the foot, monodactylism

morbis, i m disease

myasthenia, ae f weakness of
muscles from whatever cause,
myasthenia

myelītis, itīdis f inflammation
of bone marrow, myelitis

myocēle, es f hernia of a muscle,
myocele

myoplegia, ae f paralysis of muscle
or a condition in which is
decreased muscular force,
myoplegia

N

necropneumonia, ae f gangrene
of the lung, necropneumonia

neonātus, a, um s newly born child

neoplasma, ātis n any new and
morbid formation of tissue,
neoplasm

nephrolithiāsīs, is f a condition
characterized by the presence of

gravel or of renal calculi,
nephrolithiasis

nervus, i m nerve

neuralgia, ae f a painful affection
of the nerves, due to functional
disturbances or to neuritis,
neuralgia

neurītis, itīdis f inflammation of
a nerve, neuritis

neuropatholōgus, i m a specialist
treating diseases of nervous
system, neuropathologist

O

occipitālis, e occipital

ocūlus, i m eye

odontolīthus, i m calculus on
the teeth, odontolith

odontogenēsis, is f the origin and
formative development of teeth,
odontogenesis

oligocytaemia, ae f a condition in
the blood in which there is cell
deficiency, oligocytaemia

oligophrenia, ae f congenital lack
of the mentality, oligophrenia

oncolōgus, i m a specialist treating
tumors, oncologist

onychomycōsis, is f infection of nails
caused by a fungus,
onychomycosis

ophthalmoscopia, ae f instrumental-
visual examination of the eye,
ophthalmoscopy

os, oris n mouth

osteītis, itīdis f inflammation of bone
due to infection or injury, osteitis

osteōma, ātis n an innocent tumor
of bone, osteoma

osteomalacia, ae f softening of
the bones, osteomalacia

osteonecrōsis, is f death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis
osteopathia, ae f disease of bones, osteopathia
osteoporōsis, is f rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f branch of medicine for treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx, otorhinolaryngology

P

pachydactylia, ae f abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly
palatoplegia, ae f paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia
palpatio, ōnis f the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs, palpation
pantalgia, ae f pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia
partialis, e partiāl
percussio, ōnis f the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed, percussion
perfōrans, ntis perforating
pes, pedis m leg
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinōma
photophobia, ae f abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia
phrenīcus, a, um phrenic

phthisiāter, tri m a specialist treating tuberculosis, phthiotherapist
physiologia, ae f science studying normal vital processes in human body, physiology
phytotherapia, ae f method of treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy
planus, a, um plane
pneumocentēsis, is f lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity, pneumocentesis
pneumoëmpyēma, ātis n the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space, pneumoempyema
poliomyelītis, itīdis f an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal cord due to polioviruses, poliomyelitis
polymastia, ae f the state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia
polŷpus, i m a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface, polyp
polyuria, ae f increase in the amount of the excreted urine, polyuria
proctolōgus, i m a specialist treating diseases of rectum, proctologist
prognathia, ae f a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognatism
prolapsus, us m the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, prolapse
prophylaxis, is f the art of preventing disease, prophylaxis
pseudoarthrōsis, is f a false joint formed between the fragments of

a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudarthrosis
psychiatria, ae f branch of medicine treating mental diseases, psychiatry
psychōsis, is f any kind of mental disorder, psychosis
puerperalis, e puerperal
punctio, ōnis f the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it, puncture
pyelītis, itīdis f inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis
pyogēnus, a, um forming or producing pus, pyogenic
pyopneumothōrax, ācis m an inflammatory condition characterized by the presence of purulent fluid and gas in a pleural cavity, pyopneumothorax
pyosalpinx, ngis f inflammation of the uterine tube which has progressed to pus formation, pyosalpinx

R

rectum, i n rectum
renālis, e renal
replantatio, ōnis f the plantation of a removed part of the whole again, replantation
resectio, ōnis f surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc., resection
rhinogramma, ātis n X-ray film of the nose, rhinogram
ruptūra, ae f the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure, rupture

S

salpingectomy, ae f excision of a uterine tube, salpingectomy
salpingolŷsis, is f breaking-down of adhesions in a uterine tube, salpingolysis
sarcōma, ātis n a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma
sclerōma, ātis n an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous membrane of the nose or larynx, scleroma
sectio, ōnis f the act of cutting, section
sectio cadavēris a post-mortem examination of dead body
senīlis, e senile
simplex, ĭcis simple
situs, us m position, site
sive or
somatologia, ae f branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body, somatology
spasmophilia, ae f a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and spasm, spasmophilia
spasmus, i m a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of muscle, spasm
sphygmogramma, ātis n a record of the arterial pulse waves, sphygmogram
splanchnosclerōsis, is f hardening of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis
splenomegalia, ae f enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia
spondylītis, itīdis f inflammation of the spine, spondilitis

spondylodēsis, is f the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft, spondylodesis
spongiōsus, a, um spongy (spongious), full of small holes, like a sponge
stenothōrax, ācis m a short, narrow thorax or chest, stenothorax
stomatomycōsis, is f any morbid condition of the oral cavity caused by a microscopial fungus, stomatomycosis
stomatoscopia, ae f visual-instrumental examination of the oral cavity, stomatoscopy
syndrōmum, i n a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease, syndrome

T

tachycardia, ae f rapid action of the heart, tachycardia
tenorrhaphia, ae f an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy
tenotomia, ae f the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy
thermālis, e thermal
thermotherapia, ae f the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia
thoracocentēsis, is f a puncture of the wall of the thorax with the aim of any diagnostic, thoracocentesis
thrombocytopoēsis, is f the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopoiesis
thrombotīcus, a, um characterized or caused by thrombosis, thrombotic
thyroideus, a, um thyroid

thyr(e)otoxicōsis, is f any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis
toponeurōsis, is f localized neurosis, a functional derangement in any part of the body, toponeurosis
toxicomania, ae f an insane desire for poison, toxicomania
toxicōsis, is f the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison, toxicosis
transplantātum, i n a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another, transplant
traumatīcus, a, um traumatic
typhlectasia, ae f dilatation of the caecum, typhlectasia

U

ulcus, ěris n ulcer
unguis, is m nail
uraemia, ae f the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia
uranoschīsis, is f cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis
utērus, i m uterus

V

venōsus, a, um venous
verrūca, ae f wart
verus, a, um true
viscus, ěris n the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities: pleural, pericardial or peritoneal
vitium, i n a defect or a vice, vitium

X

xanthopsia, ae f a disturbance of color vision, when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia

xanthōsis, is f yellowish discoloration, especially of the skin, xanthosis

xerophthalmia, ae f a morbid condition of eyes characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (=xeroma)

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon

dolichocōlon, i n

abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea tachypnoë, ës f

abnormal narrowing of the mouth, stenostomy stenostomia, ae f

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel, angiostenosis angiostenōsis, is f

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia tachyphagia, ae f

abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia hypopepsia, ae f

abnormal sluggishness of physical movement, bradykinesia bradykinesia, ae f

abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly pachydactylia, ae f

an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium pyopericardium, i n

achylia, absence of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice achylia, ae f

acquired acquisītus, a, um

the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction extractio, ōnis f

acute acūtus, a, um

acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain, polioencephalitis polioencephalītis, itīdis f

adenoma of the eyelid,

blepharoadenoma

blepharoadenōma, ātis n

adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body

adiponecrōsis, is f

aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen

aërobion, i n

aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live

aërobīcus, a, um

aglossia, the congenital condition of being without a tongue aglossia, ae f

alimentary alimentarius, a, um

allergic allergīcus, a, um

amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage amputatio, ōnis f

anaemia, changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood anaemia, ae f

anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist although deprived of free oxygen or air anaërobion, i n

anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen anaërobīcus, a, um

angiology, the science of the blood vessels angiologia, ae f

angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels angiōma, ātis, n

anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution anthropolōgus, i m

aortic aortĭcus, a, um
apn(o)ea, the cessation in breathing
 apnoë, ës f
arthrocentesis, the surgical
 procedure of puncturing a joint
 arthrocentēsis, is f
arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting
 a joint arthralgia, ae f
atrachia, not having hair atrichia, ae f
atrophy, a condition of general
 malnutrition from whatever cause
 atrophia, ae f
atypical atypĭcus, a, um
autolaryngoscopy, the examination
 of one's own larynx with
 a laryngoscope autolaryngoscopia,
 ae f
autoplasty, the repair of a diseased
 or injured tissue or organ by
 material taken from another part
 of the body autoplastĭca, ae f
autopsy, post-mortem examination
 of a body in order to establish
 the cause of death autopsia, ae f

B

benign benignus, a, um
biopharmaceutics, study of physical
 and chemical properties
 of medicinal substances
 biopharmaceutĭca, ae f
biopsy, examination for purposes
 of diagnosis of tissue cut from
 the living body biopsia, ae f
blepharotomy, incision of an eyelid
 blepharotomia, ae f
brachyoesophagus, a congenitally
 short oesophagus
 brachyoesophăgus, i m
bradycardia, slowing of the heart
 rate bradycardia, ae f

branch of clinical medicine
 treating rectum diseases,
 proctology proctologia, ae f
branch of medicine treating
 diseases of children,
 paediatrics paediatra, ae f
breast mamma, ae f
bronchitis, an inflamed
 condition of the bronchi
 bronchĭtis, itĭdis f
burn combustio, ōnis f

C

calculosis, the condition
 in which a number of calculi
 are present in any part
 of the body calculōsis, is f
calculus (plur. calculi),
 a solid pathological
 concretion calcŭlus, i m
calculus on the teeth, odontolith
 odontolĭthus, i m
cancerogenic (=carcinogenic),
 producing carcinoma
 cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant
 epithelial tumor carcinōma,
 ātis n
a carcinoma the fragment of
 which contains cartilaginous
 elements, chondroma
 chondrōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of
glandular epithelium and
connective tissue,
adenocarcinoma
 adenocarcinōma, ātis n
cardinal cardinālis, e
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray
 examination of the heart;
 2) graphical picture of heart
 work cardiogramma, ātis n

cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical recording of heart activity

cardiographia, ae f

causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous oncogēnus, a, um

cephalalgia, pain in the head

cephalalgia, ae f

cerebral cerebrālis, e

cerebrospinal cerebrospinālis, e

changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total

amount of blood anaemia, ae f

chemical chemīcus, a, um

cholecystolithiasis, the condition in which there are gallstones in the gall bladder or bile duct

cholecystolithiāsīs, is f

chondroporosis, a porous condition of cartilage shown in thinning of cartilage and formation of spaces and sinuses

chondroporōsis, is f

chronic chronīcus, a, um

a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis

psoriāsīs, is f

chyluria, the condition in which the urine contains lymph

chyluria, ae f

closed clausus, a, um

collapse, a state of extreme weakness with physical and mental depression

collapsus, us m

colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from the colon

colonorrhagia, ae f

colpocystotomy, surgical incision into the urinary bladder through the wall of the vagina

colpocystotomia, ae f

colpohysteropexy, the operative fixation of the uterus through the vagina colpohysteropexia, ae f

colpomyomectomy, removal of a myoma from the uterus by the vaginal route

colpomyomectomia, ae f

coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus

coma, ātis n

composite composītus, a, um

a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure

commotio, ōnis f

a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

nephrolithiāsīs, is f

a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia

aphagia

a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia

hypochylia, ae f

a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

brachydactylia, ae f

a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia

hepatomegalia, ae f

congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing

congelatio, ōnis f

congenital cleft of a vertebral arch or several arches, spondyloschisis

spondyloschīsis, is f

congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis cystosch̄isis, is f

cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing cryochirurgia, ae f

cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt cryptolīthus, i m

cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis cryptopsoriās̄is, is f

cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder cystītis, it̄idis f

cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells cytologia, ae f

D

dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears dacryorrhoea, ae f

deficiency deficientia, ae f

dermatitis, inflammation of the skin dermatītis, it̄idis f

desmalgia, pain in a ligament desmalgia, ae f

desmotomy, incision of the ligament desmotomia, ae f

diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics iridodiagnostīca, ae f

didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot didactylismus, i m

diffuse diffūsus, a, um

dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia gastrectasia, ae f

direct directus, a, um

a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea pyorrhoea, ae f

any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy arthropathia, ae f

any diseased condition of the viscera, splanchnopathy splanchnopathia, ae f

any disease of skin, dermatosis dermatosis, is f

a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia xanthopsia, ae f

dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint dislocatio, ōnis f

dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter dolichocōlon, i n

dropsy, the abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissue or cavity space hydrops, ōpis m

dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and lower abdomen at or about the time of the menses dysmenorrhoea, ae f

dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue dysplasia, ae f

dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity dystonia, ae f

dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition dystrophia, ae f

E

ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part ectopia, ae f

eczema, a non-contagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning
 eczēma, ātis n

embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are present in the blood
 embolaemia, ae f

embryectomy, the surgical removal of the embryo
 embryectomia, ae f

embryopathology, the branch of pathology concerned with defective or abnormal development of embryo
 embryopathologia, ae f

emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated
 emphysēma, ātis n

encephalomalacia, softening of the brain
 encephalomalacia, ae f

encephalopathy, any morbid condition of the brain
 encephalopathia, ae f

endogenous, having origin within the organism
 endogēnus, a, um

endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus
 endometrītis, itīdis f

enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit
 enophthalmus, i m

enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestine
 enterītis, itīdis f

enterogastritis, inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach
 enterogastrītis, itīdis f

enterolithiasis, the formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine
 enterolithiāsis, is f

enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine
 enteromegalia, ae f

the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion
 invasio, ōnis f

erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia
 erythēma, ātis n

evisceration, a removal of the contents of an organ or part
 evisceratio, ōnis f

an excessive flow of milk, galactorroea
 galactorroea, ae f

excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia
 hyperaesthesia, ae f

exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism
 exogēnus, a, um

eye
 oculus, i m

F

fetal
 fetālis, e

femur
 femur, ōris n

fever
 febris, is f

fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue
 fibrōma, ātis n

fibrous
 fibrōsus, a, um

any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate
 transsudātum, i n

the formation of concretions, lithiasis
 lithiāsis, is f

fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone
 fractūra, ae f

functional
 functionālis, e

G

galactostasis, arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk
galactostāsis, is f
gall bladder vesīca fellea (biliāris)
geminated geminātus, a, um
gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged gerontologia, ae f
gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness gigantismus, i m
glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences glaucōma, ātis n
glossitis, inflammation of the tongue
glossītis, itīdis f
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws
gnathalgia, ae f
gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla gnathoschīsis, is f
goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland struma, ae f

H

haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases
haematologia, ae f
haematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood haematōma, ātis n
haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord
haematomyelia, ae f
haematosalpinx, collection and retention of blood in a uterine tube haematosalpinx, ngis f
haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood haemogramma, ātis n
haemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males

and transmitted by females
haemophilia, ae f
hand manus, us f
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis osteosclerōsis, is f
headache dolor (ōris m) capītis
hemiatrophy, atrophy only affecting one half of the body, or one half of an organ
hemiatrophia, ae f
hepatic hepaticus, a, um
hepatitis, inflammation of the liver hepatītis, itīdis f
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver
hepatomegalia, ae f
hereditary hereditarius, a, um
herniation of the uterus, metrocele metrocēle, es f
hidrosis 1) the process of secreting sweat; 2) abnormally profuse sweating hidrōsis, is f
hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint
hydrarthrōsis, is f
hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus hydromētra, ae f
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body
hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood
hyperglycaemia, ae f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva
hypersalivatio, ōnis f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure hypertensio, ōnis f

hypogalactia, the secretion of too small quantity of milk
hypogalactia, ae f

hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycaemia, a low blood sugar concentration hypoglycaemicus, a, um

hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory hypomnesia, ae f

hypophrenia, feebleness of mind
hypophrenia, ae f

hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part hypoplasia, ae f

hypothermia, deficiency of body heat
hypothermia, ae f

I

iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks, iatrogēnus, a, um

immune immūnus, a, um

immunodeficiency immunodeficientia, ae f

impairment of the voice, dysphonia
dysphonia, ae f

implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft implantātum, i n

implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body implantatio, ōnis f

incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysteroectomy
laparohysteroectomia, ae f

an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis
leucocytōsis, is f

infective infectīvus, a, um

inflammation inflammation, ōnis f

~ of the cornea, keratitis
keratītis, itīdis f

~ affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis
pyelocystītis, itīdis f

~ in the nail fold, panaris
panaritium, i n

~ of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis laparomyosītis, itīdis f

~ of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis endometrītis, itīdis f

~ of the liver, hepatitis hepatītis, itīdis f

~ of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis
meningitis, itīdis f

injury laesio, ōnis f

intermittent, coming and going at intervals intermittens, ntis

internal internus, a, um

intravenous intravenōsus, a, um

iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris
iridodiagnostīca, ae f

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f

K

keratomycosis, disease of cornea caused by a fungus
keratomycōsis, is f

keratoplasty, plastic surgery of the cornea keratoplastīca, ae f

any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia arthralgia, ae f

L

left sinister, tra, trum

lung pulmo, ōnis m

lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels lymphangiītis, itīdis f

lymphocytic lymphocytīcus, a, um

lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes lymphocytōsis, is f

M

macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal macrocytūs, i m

macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails macronychia, ae f

mammogram (=mastogram) result of breast X-ray examination, mammogramma. ātis n

a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma sarcōma, ātis n

mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland mastopathia, ae f

measurement the size of pelvis in women, pelvimetry pelvimetria, ae f

a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, neurosurgeon neurochirurgus, i m

megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size megaloduodēnum, i n

megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on megalomania, ae f

melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor

melanocarcinōma, ātis n

a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma meningiōma, ātis n

menalgia, painful menstruation menalgia, ae f

meningitis, inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord meningītis, itīdis f

meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges meningoencephalītis, itīdis f

metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity metastāsīs, is f

micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands micromastia, ae f

microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse microsphygmia, ae f

monocytopoiesis, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow monocytopoēsis, is f

monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease monopathophobia, ae f

monostotic, pertaining to a single bone monostotīcus, a, um

any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy pneumopathia, ae f

any morbid condition of the nose,
rhinopathy rhinopathia, ae f
any morbid condition or abnormal
growth of the hair, trichopathy
trichopathia, ae f
myelocyaemia, the presence
of myelocytes in the blood
myelocyaemia, ae f
myopia, short sight myopia, ae f

N

narcosis, stupor produced by drugs
and tending to insensibility and
paralysis narcōsis, is f
narrowing or stricture of the duct of
the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
dacryostenōsis, is f
nebraemia, a condition in which
the blood loses its vitality
nebraemia, ae f
nearthrosis, an artificial joint
implanted by the surgical
operation nearthrōsis, is f
a neoplasm originating in embryonic
elements or blighted ovum,
embryoneoplasm
embryoneoplasma, ātis n
nephrogenic, produced by
or originating in a kidney
nephrogēnus, a um
nephropathy, disease of the kidney
nephropathia, ae f
neurogenic, happening because of
the nervous system neurogēnus,
a, um

O

odontogenic, relating to
the development of the teeth
odontogēnus, a, um
odontome, a solid or cystic tumour
occurring in the jaws which is

derived from cells conserved
in tooth development
odontōma, ātis n
oedema, the presence of
excessive amounts of fluid in
the intercellular tissue spaces
of the body oedēma, ātis n
oesophagostenosis, narrowing
of the oesophagus
oesophagostenōsis, is f
oesophagostoma, any opening
into the oesophagus apart
from the normal entrance and
exit oesophagostōma, ātis n
oesophagus oesophāgus, i m
oligodactylia, a congenital
deficiency of fingers, or toes
oligodactylia, ae f
oncologist, a specialist treating
tumorous diseases oncolōgus,
i m
oncotherapy, the treatment of
tumours oncotherapia, ae f
onychodystrophy, malformation
of the nails due to impaired
nutrition onychodystrophia,
ae f
open apertus, a, um
operation operatio, ōnis f
the operation for the relief
of hernia and the resultant
reduction of the latter,
herniotomia herniotomia, ae f
the operation of removal of
the adenoid growth by
excision, adenotomy
adenotomia, ae f
the operation of transference
of a tissue of an organ from
one place to an other with
the aim of improving
or renewing a function,

transplantation transplantatio, ōnis f
ophthalmoplegy, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles ophthalmoplegia, ae f
ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball ophthalmorrhexis, is f
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye ophthalmoscopia, ae f
the origin and development of bone marrow, myelogenesis myelogenēsis, is f
the origin and development of morbid condition, pathogenesis pathogenēsis, is f
the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis histogenēsis, is f
osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues osteochondrōsis, is f
osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition osteodystrophia, ae f
osteomalacia, softening of the bones osteomalacia, ae f
osteoporosis, rarefaction of bone osteoporōsis, is f
otogenic, happening because of the ear otogēnus, a, um
otolaryngologist, a specialist treating ear and larynx diseases otolaryngolōgus, i m

P

pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of the lips pachycheilia, ae f
panaris, inflammation in the nail fold panaritium, i n
paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia palatoplegia, ae f

paralysis, loss of motor strength due to a functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanism paralýsis, is f
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia diplegia, ae f
paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney paranephritīs, itīdis f
partial partiālis, e
a pathological condition in which one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is only affected, monoplegia monoplegia, ae f
a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy polyarthropathia, ae f
pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia chondromalacia, ae f
pediatrician, a specialist treating children's diseases paediāter, tri m
peduncle peduncūlus, i m
pelvic pelvīcus, a, um
pericystitis, inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected pericystītis, itīdis f
a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus microcephālus, i m
pharmacophobia, morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines pharmacophobia, ae f

pharmacotherapia, science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy
 pharmacotherapia, ae f

phlebography 1) radiographic visualization of veins; 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph
 phlebographia, ae f

phoniatics (=phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech
 phoniatria, ae f

phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds
 phonocardiogramma, ātis n

photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light
 photophobia, ae f

phthisiologist, a specialist treating tuberculosis
 phthisiāter, tri m

phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs
 phytotherapia, ae f

plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are suspended
 plasma, ātis n

any plastic operation for repair or reconstruction of the urinary bladder, cystoplasty
 cystoplastīca, ae f

any plastic surgical operation on the vagina, colpoplasty
 colpoplastīca, ae f

pneumocentesis, lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity
 pneumocentēsis, is f

pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space
 pneumoempyēma, ātis n

pneumohaemothorax, an accumulation of gas, air and

blood in the cavity of the thorax
 pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m

pneumonia, inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung
 pneumonia, ae f

pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung
 pneumorrhaphia, ae f

pneumotomy, the making of an incision into the lung
 pneumotomia, ae f

podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid
 podāgra, ae f

podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot
 podalgia, ae f

polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of the brain
 polioencephalopathia, ae f

polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins
 polyavitaminōsis, is f

polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane
 polypōsis, is f

polypus of the vagina, colpopolypus
 colpopolýpus, i m

postoperative
 postoperatīvus, a, um

primary
 primarius, a, um

proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of

the rectum proctodiagnostīca, ae f
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum
 proctoscopia, ae f
proctospasm, spasmodic contraction of the rectum proctospasmus, i m
profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea
 rhinorrhoea, ae f
prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part
 prolapsus, us m
psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases psychiāter, tri m
psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes
 psychogēnus, a, um
psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality psycholōgus, i m
puncture of the cornea,
 keratocentesis keratocentēsis, is f
puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it punctūra, ae f;
 punctio, ōnis f
pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine pyuria, ae f

R

a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte macrocytus, i m
removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part,
 amputation amputatio, ōnis f
removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part,
 extirpation extirpatio, ōnis f
replantation, the plantation of a removed part of the whole to its site again replantatio, ōnis f

resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, colon etc. resectio, ōnis f
results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram
 haemogramma, ātis n
retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital canal stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea
 cryptomenorrhoea, ae f
retina retīna, ae f
rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose rhinolīthus, i m
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose
 rhinopathia, ae f
rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose
 rhinoscopia, ae f
rib costa, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum

S

salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes salpingogramma, ātis n
salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube
 salpingopexia, ae f
sarcomatosis, the condition in which a number of sarcomata develops here and there on the body sarcomatōsis, is f
science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy
 pharmacotherapia, ae f

scientist studying normal vital processes in human organism
 physiologus, i m
sclerodermatitis, inflammation and induration of the skin
 sclerodermatitis, itidis f
secondary secundarius, a, um
senile senilis, e
separation of a tissue as a result of its death, necrolysis necrolysis, is f
sialolith, a salivary calculus
 sialolithus, i m
simple simplex, icis
somatology, branch of anthropology studying structure of human body
 somatologia, ae f
spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm
 typhlospasmus, i m
specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist biologus, i m
specialist studying the man in process of his evolution, anthropologist anthropologus, i m
medical specialist treating ~ blood diseases, hematologist
 haematologus, i m
~ children's diseases, pediatrician
 paediatr, tri m
~ ear and larynx diseases, otolaryngologist, otolaryngologus, i m
~ inner organs, therapist
 therapeutista, ae m
~ mental diseases, psychiatrist
 psychiatr, tri m
~ tumorous diseases, oncologist
 oncologus, i m
~ tuberculosis, phthisiologist
 phthisiater, tri m
splenic splenicus, a, um

splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen
 splenohepatomegalia ae f
spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae spondylopathia, ae f
spongiform, having resemblance a sponge spongiformis, e
a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia oligodontia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia erythropenia, ae f
stenosis, narrowing or stricture of an orifice or of the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ
 stenosis, is f
stomach gaster, tris f
stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity stomatologia, ae f
stomatitis, inflammation of the oral cavity, stomatitis, itidis f
subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which the word acute would not be appropriate subacutus, a, um
subcutaneous subcutaneus a, um
a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli, thromboembolism
 thromboembolismus, i m
superficial superficialis, e
suppurative, pus-forming
 suppurativus, a, um
surgical operation on the small structures with the aid of

a microscope, microsurgery
 microchirurgia, ae f
symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball symblephāron, i n
symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function
 symptōma, ātis n
syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease
 syndrōmum, i n
synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused synphalangismus, i m

T

tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia tachyphagia, ae f
tendon tendo, ĩnis m
tenodesis, operative fixation of a tendon tenodēsis, is f
the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax
 pneumothōrax, ācis m
the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum
 haemotympānum, i n
the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria haematuria, ae f
the production and evolution of form, morphogenesis
 morphogenēsis, is f
the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis urolithiāsis, is f
the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema enanthēma, ātis n
the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent

opening into the urinary bladder, cystostomy
 cystostomia, se f
therapist, specialist for treating diseases of inner organs therapeutista, ae m
thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax
 thoracometria, ae f
thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli thromboēbolismus, i m
tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions tenolýsis, is f
thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life producing a thrombus
 thrombōsis, is f
tissue textus, us m
tomography, body-section radiography tomographia, ae f
tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil tonsillītis, itīdis f
tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil tonsillotomia, ae f
topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body topographia, ae f
topophobia, unreasoning fear of certain places topophobia, ae f
total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy
 pneumonectomia, ae f
toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by

the absorption of poisons toxicōsis, is f

transfusion, the introduction of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions into the blood vessels of the circulatory system transfusio, ōnis f

transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function transplantation, ōnis f

traumatic traumatīcus, a, um
treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy phytoterapia, ae f

treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy physiotherapia, ae f

tuberculosis tuberculōsis, is f
a tumor consisting of connective tissue element, desmoneoplasm desmoneoplasma, ātis n

typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum typhlocēle, es f

U

ulceration, the process of formation of an ulcer ulceratio, ōnis f

ultrasonic, ultrasound

ultrasonarius, a, um

urethritis, inflammation of the urethra urethrītis, itīdis f

use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy cryotherapia, ae f

V

viral virālis, e

X

xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland xerostomia, ae f

the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiology angiocardigraphia, ae f

the X-ray examination of breast, mammography mammographia, ae f

W

a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis hydrarthrōsis, is f

wound vulnus, ěris n

THE INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS' ANTHEM "GAUDEAMUS"

**Gaudeāmus igītur,
Juvēnes dum sumus!
Post jucundam juventūtem,
Post molestam senectūtem
Nos habēbit humus. (bis)**

Let us rejoice therefore
While we are young!
After a pleasant youth,
After a troubling old age
The earth will have us.

Ubi sunt qui ante nos
In mundo fuēre?
Transeas ad supēros,
Transeas ad infēros,
Hos si vis vidēre. (bis)

Where are they who before us
Were in the world?
You may go up to the gods,
You may cross into the underworld,
If you wish to see them.

Vita nostra brevis est,
Brevi finiētur:
Venit mors velocīter,
Rapit nos atrocīter,
Nemīni parcētur. (bis)

Our life is brief,
It will shortly end:
Death comes quickly,
Snatches us cruelly,
It spares no one.

**Vivat Academia!
Vivant professōres!
Vivat membrum quodlibet,
Vivant membra quaelibet,
Semper sint in flore! (bis)**

Long live the academy!
Long live the teachers!
Long live each student!
Long live all students!
May they always flourish!

**Vivant omnes virgīnes,
Graciles, formōsae!
Vivant et muliēres,
Tenēre, amabīles,
Bonaē, laboriōsae. (bis)**

Long live all girls,
Slender and beautiful!
Long live wives as well,
Tender, loveable,
Good and productive.

**Vivat et Respublīca
Et qui illam regunt!
Vivat nostra civitas,
Maecenātum caritas,
Qui nos hic protēgunt! (bis)**

Long live the state as well
As they who rule it!
Long live our city
[And] the charity of benefactors
Who protect us here!

Pereat tristitia,
Pereant dolōres!
Pereat diabōlus,
Quivis antiburschius
Atque irrisōres! (bis)

Let sadness perish,
Let sorrows perish!
Let the devil perish,
Let [perish] whoever who is anti-student
As well those who mock us!

The most popular stanzas nowadays are typed in black type

LATIN PROVERBS AND QUOTATIONS

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Aes debitōrem leve, grave inimīcum facit | <i>If you want to keep a friend, never borrow, never lend</i> |
| 2. Amīcus certus in re incerta cernitur | <i>A friend in need is a friend indeed</i> |
| 3. Amor non est medicabilis herbis | <i>No herb will cure love</i> |
| 4. Amor tussisque non celantur | <i>Love and cough cannot be hidden</i> |
| 5. Aquila muscas non captat | <i>An eagle doesn't catch the flies</i> |
| 6. Arte et humanitāte, labōre et scientia | <i>By art and humanity, by labor and knowledge</i> |
| 7. Audiatur et altēra pars | <i>Let's hear the opposite side!</i> |
| 8. Aurōra Misis amīca | <i>He that will thrive, must rise at five</i> |
| 9. Bis dat qui cito dat | <i>He gives twice who gives in a trice</i> |
| 10. Bona valetūdo melior est quam maxīmae divitiae | <i>Good health is above wealth</i> |
| 11. Cogitatiōnes posteriōres saepe sunt meliōres | <i>Second thoughts are the best</i> |
| 12. Cogito ergo sum | <i>I think, therefore I am</i> |
| 13. Consuetūdo est altēra natūra | <i>Custom is second nature</i> |
| 14. Copia non est inopia | <i>Store is no sore</i> |
| 15. Cum promisēras, facias | <i>Promise is a debt</i> |
| 16. De gustibus non est disputandum | <i>Tastes are not to be argued</i> |
| 17. De mortuis aut bene aut nihil | <i>Speak nothing but good of the dead</i> |
| 18. Diabōlus non est tam ater, ac pingitur | <i>The devil is not so black as he is painted</i> |
| 19. Dictum — factum | <i>Said and done</i> |
| 20. Dies levat lucrum | <i>Time heals most sorrows</i> |
| 21. Divīde et impēra | <i>Divide and rule</i> |
| 22. Domus propria domus optīma | <i>My house is my castle. (East or west, home is best)</i> |
| 23. Dum spiro spero | <i>As long as I breathe, I hope</i> |
| 24. Duos qui lepōres sequitur, neutrum capit | <i>If you run after two hares, you will catch neither</i> |
| 25. Dura lex sed lex | <i>The law is the law and must be obeyed</i> |
| 26. Experientia est optīma magistra
(=Usus est optīmus magister) | <i>Experience is the best teacher</i> |
| 27. Ebrietas est voluntaria insania | <i>Drunkenness is nothing but voluntary madness</i> |
| 28. E cantu dignoscitur avis | <i>A bird may be known by its song</i> |
| 29. Equi donāti dentes non sunt inspiciendi | <i>Don't look a gift horse in the mouth</i> |
| 30. Errāre humanum est | <i>It's human to err</i> |
| 31. Est avis in dextra melior quam quattuor extra | <i>A bird in the hand is worth one hundred in flight</i> |
| 32. Facīle dictu, difficīle factu | <i>Easier said than done</i> |
| 33. Facta, non verba | <i>Better to do well than to say well</i> |
| 34. Festīna lente | <i>Make haste slowly</i> |

35.	Finis corōnat opus	<i>All is well that ends well</i>
36.	Fronti nulla fides	<i>Appearances are deceitful</i>
37.	Fortes fortūna adjuvat	<i>Fortune favours the brave</i>
38.	Homīnes amplius oculis credunt quam aurībus	<i>A picture is worth a thousand words</i>
39.	Homo a se ortus	<i>A self-made man</i>
40.	Homo doctus in se divitias habet	<i>The wealth of the mind is the only true wealth</i>
41.	Homo est anīmal sociāle	<i>Man is by nature a political animal</i>
42.	Homo homīni lupus est	<i>Man is a wolf to man</i>
43.	Homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit	<i>Man proposes but God disposes</i>
44.	Homo sum, humāni nihil a me alienum esse puto	<i>I am a man, I count nothing human alien to me</i>
45.	Ignorantia non est argumentum	<i>Lack of knowledge is no excuse (=Ignorance is no argument)</i>
46.	In medio stat virtus	<i>Virtue stands in the middle</i>
47.	Ira furor brevis est	<i>Anger is short madness</i>
48.	Labor et patientia omnia vincunt	<i>Diligence is the mother of success</i>
49.	Mala herba cito crescit	<i>Great weeds grow apace</i>
50.	Manus manum lavat	<i>One hand washes the other</i>
51.	Mare verbōrum, gutta rerum	<i>Great boast, small roast</i>
52.	Medīcus curat, natūra sanat	<i>The physician heals, nature convalesces</i>
53.	Mens sana in corpōre sano	<i>A healthy mind in a healthy body</i>
54.	Nemo sine vitio est	<i>No one is without a fault</i>
55.	Ne diffēras in crastīnum	<i>Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today</i>
56.	Ne noceas, si juvare non potes	<i>Do no harm, if you can not help</i>
57.	Nomen est omen	<i>The name is the sign</i>
58.	Ne Juppiter quidem omnībus placet	<i>He who pleased everybody died before he was born</i>
59.	Nihil volenti difficīle est	<i>Anything is possible if you wish hard enough</i>
60.	Non est fumus absque igne	<i>There is no smoke without fire</i>
61.	Non est via in medicīna sine lingua Latīna	<i>There is no way in medicine without Latin</i>
62.	Non scholae, sed vitae discīmus	<i>We learn not for school but for life</i>
63.	Nulla aetas ad discendum sera	<i>It is never too late to learn</i>
64.	Nulla regūla sine exceptione	<i>There is no rule without exception</i>
65.	Nulla dies sine linea	<i>Not a day without a line</i>
66.	Nullum malum sine aliquo bono	<i>No great loss without some small gain</i>
67.	Omnia fluunt, omnia mutantur	<i>Everything flows and everything changes</i>
68.	Omnia mea mecum porto	<i>All I have, I carry with me</i>
69.	O tempōra, o mores!	<i>What times! What customs!</i>
70.	Otium post negotium	<i>Work done, have your fun</i>

71.	Pacta sunt servanda	<i>Agreements should be obeyed</i>
72.	Paulātim summa petūntur	<i>Learn to creep before you leap</i>
73.	Per aspēra ad astra	<i>Through the thorns (hard-ships) to the stars!</i>
74.	Pigritia est mater vitiōrum	<i>Idleness is the mother of all evil</i>
75.	Plenus venter non studet libenter	<i>A filled stomach is deaf to learning</i>
76.	Potius sero quam nunquam	<i>Better is late than never</i>
77.	Primum noli nocēre	<i>First, do no harm</i>
78.	Principium dimidium totīus	<i>Well begun is half done</i>
79.	Procul ex oculis — procul ex mente	<i>Out of sight, out of mind</i>
80.	Quem Deus perdēre vult, dementat prius	<i>Whom God wishes to ruin, he first deprives him of reason</i>
81.	Quidquid latet apparēbit	<i>What is done by night appears by day</i>
82.	Quidquid Latīne dictum sit, altum vidētur	<i>Anything said in Latin sounds profound</i>
83.	Qui non est nobiscum adversus nos est	<i>He that is not with us is against us</i>
84.	Qui quaerit, repērit	<i>He will find who is searching</i>
85.	Qui scribit, bis legit	<i>He who writes reads twice</i>
86.	Qui semīnat mala, metet mala	<i>The ill you do will rebound upon you</i>
87.	Qui tacet consentīre vidētur	<i>Silence gives consent</i>
88.	Quod erat demonstrandum	<i>Which was to be proved</i>
89.	Quod licet Jovi, non licet bovi	<i>What Jupiter is allowed to do cattle are not</i>
90.	Quot capīta, tot sententiae	<i>So many men, so many minds</i>
91.	Radīces litterārum amārae, fructus dulces	<i>Whatever is good to know is difficult to learn</i>
92.	Repetitio est mater studiōrum	<i>Repeating is the mother of learning</i>
93.	Saltāre ad tibiam alicūjus	<i>To dance after somebody's tune</i>
94.	Scientia potentia est	<i>Knowledge is power</i>
95.	Scio me nihil scire	<i>I know that I know nothing</i>
96.	Sero venientībus ossa	<i>There is nothing left for the late-comers</i>
97.	Sine ira et studio	<i>Without ill-will and without favor</i>
98.	Sine labōre non erit panis in ore	<i>No pains, no gains</i>
99.	Si vis amari, ama!	<i>To be loved, love!</i>
100.	Suae quisque fortūnae faber est	<i>Each man is the maker of his own fortune</i>
101.	Sudōre et sanguīne, opera et studio	<i>By blood, toil, tears and sweat</i>
102.	Suis quaeque temporibus	<i>There is a time and place for everything</i>
103.	Suum cuique	<i>To each his own</i>
104.	Tamdiu discendum est, quamdiu discendum vivis	<i>Live and learn</i>
105.	Tantum possūmus, quantum scimus	<i>We can do as much as we know</i>
106.	Temperantia est custos vitae	<i>Excesses destroy our powers</i>
107.	Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis	<i>The times change and we are changing with them</i>

108. Tempōris filia veritas	<i>Truth is a daughter of time</i>
109. Totus mundus agit histriōnem	<i>All the world's a stage</i>
110. Ubi concordia ibi victoria	<i>Where is the unity, there is the victory</i>
111. Umbram suam timēre	<i>He is afraid of his own shadow</i>
112. Una hirundo non facit ver	<i>One swallow makes no summer</i>
113. Ut salūtas, ita salutabēris	<i>As the call, so the echo</i>
114. Verba docent, exempla trahunt	<i>Words are teaching, examples are pulling</i>
115. Verum amīcum pecunia non parābis	<i>Money cannot buy friendship</i>
116. Vincuntur molli pectōra dura prece	<i>A word warmly said gives comfort even to a cat</i>
117. Vox popūli — vox Dei	<i>The voice of the people is the God's voice</i>

MEDICAL PROFESSIONAL EXPRESSIONS

1. Abactus venter	<i>Artificially induced abortion</i>
2. Abalienatio mentis	<i>Insanity; mental derangement</i>
3. Ad aurem (ad aur.)	<i>At the ear</i>
4. Ad libitum (ad lib.)	<i>At pleasure, freely</i>
5. Ad usum externum (internum)	<i>To be taken externally (internally); for external (internal) use</i>
6. Alienatio partis	<i>Gangrene</i>
7. Alternis diēbus (alt. d.)	<i>Every other day</i>
8. Alternis horis (a. h.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
9. Ante meridiem (a. m.)	<i>Morning, before noon</i>
10. Ante mortem	<i>Before death</i>
11. Ante partum	<i>Before childbirth</i>
12. Ante prandium (a. p.)	<i>Before dinner</i>
13. Auris dextra (a. d.)	<i>Right ear</i>
14. Auris laevis (sinistra) (a. l., a. s.)	<i>Left ear</i>
15. Aures utraeque	<i>Both ears</i>
16. Bipāra	<i>A woman who has had born two children at separate births</i>
17. Bis in die (b. i. d.)	<i>Twice a day</i>
18. Compos mentis	<i>Of sound mind</i>
19. Dolōres vagi	<i>Wandering pains</i>
20. Facies hippocratīca	<i>The appearance of a dying person described by Hippocrates: a pale or livid face with dull sunken eyes, pinched nose, hollow cheeks and temples, open mouth and dropped lower jaw</i>
21. Habitus aegrōti	<i>The general physical appearance of a diseased person; habit</i>

22.	Horrida cutis (=cutis anserina)	<i>Goose flesh</i>
23.	Impotentia coeundi	<i>Sexual impotence in the male</i>
24.	Impotentia erigendi	<i>Sexual impotence due to lack of the power of erection of the penis</i>
25.	Impotentia generandi	<i>Inability to reproduce</i>
26.	In articulo mortis	<i>At the instant of death</i>
27.	In extrēmis	<i>At the point of death</i>
28.	In situ	1. <i>In the normal, natural or original position</i> 2. <i>In a given place</i>
29.	Inter alia	<i>Among the other</i>
30.	In utero	<i>Within the uterus</i>
31.	In vacuo	<i>In a vacuum</i>
32.	In vitro	<i>Within a glass vessel; applied to changes taking place in the test-tube method of investigation</i>
33.	In vivo	<i>Within the living organism</i>
34.	Intra vitam	<i>During life</i>
35.	Locum tenens	<i>A medical practitioner who acts as deputy for another</i>
36.	Locus minoris resistentiae	<i>The place of least resistance (an organ or tissue most likely to be a particular disease)</i>
37.	Lusus naturae	<i>A teratism or other freak of nature</i>
38.	Malum aegypticum	<i>Diphtheria (literally — Egyptian evil)</i>
39.	Malum arteriarum senile	<i>Senile arteriosclerosis (literally — senile evil of arteries)</i>
40.	Malum caducum	<i>Epilepsy (literally — falling evil)</i>
41.	Malum venereum	<i>Syphilis (literally — venereal evil)</i>
42.	Minimum audibile	<i>The auditory threshold; the least sound that can be heard</i>
43.	Minimum cognoscibile	<i>The visibility threshold for recognizing shapes</i>
44.	Minimum sensibile	<i>The threshold of consciousness</i>
45.	Muscae volitantes	<i>The appearance in the fields of vision of variously shaped figures caused by defect of the vitreous humor (literally — flying flies)</i>
46.	Noli - me - tangere	<i>An old but colorful name for rodent ulcer (literally — do not touch me)</i>
47.	Non compos mentis	<i>A person who is not sufficiently sound of mind to manage his own affairs</i>
48.	Nostrum	<i>A quack remedy or a medicine the ingredients of which are kept secret</i>
49.	Nullipara	<i>A woman who has not given birth to a child</i>
50.	Oculus dexter (OD, o. d.)	<i>Right eye</i>
51.	Omnibus alternis horis (o. alt. hor.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
52.	Omni mane (o. m.)	<i>Every morning</i>

53.	Omni nocte (o. n.)	<i>Every night</i>
54.	Per rectum (p. r.)	<i>Per rectum (through the rectum)</i>
55.	Post meridiem (p. m.)	<i>Evening or afternoon</i>
56.	Post mortem	<i>After death</i>
57.	Post partum	<i>After childbirth</i>
58.	Post prandium	<i>After dinner</i>
59.	Potentia coëundi	<i>The capacity to have sexual intercourse</i>
60.	Potentia concipiendi	<i>The capacity to conceive</i>
61.	Potentia generandi	<i>The power to beget children</i>
62.	Primigravida	<i>One who is pregnant for the first time</i>
63.	Primipara	<i>A woman who has had one child</i>
64.	Prognōsis anceps	<i>An uncertain prognosis</i>
65.	Prognōsis fausta	<i>A good prognosis</i>
66.	Prognōsis infausta	<i>An unfavorable prognosis</i>
67.	Prognōsis quoad vitam	<i>An opinion as to whether the patient will live</i>
68.	Pro ratiōne aetātis p. r. aet.)	<i>According to age</i>
69.	Pro re nata (p. r. n.)	<i>Occasionally, when required</i>
70.	Pubertas plena	<i>The attainment of full sexual maturity</i>
71.	Pubertas praecox	<i>Puberty occurring at an abnormally early age</i>
72.	Quantum libet (=quantum placet)	<i>As much as you please</i>
73.	Quaqua hora (q. q. h.)	<i>Every hour</i>
74.	Quater in die (q. i. d.)	<i>Four times a day</i>
75.	Secundigravida	<i>A woman who is pregnant for the second time</i>
76.	Secundipara	<i>A woman who has had 2 children, in two different pregnancies</i>
77.	Status asthmaticus	<i>A severe and continuous attack of asthma in which there is marked dispnoea and finally exhaustion and collapse</i>
78.	Status convulsivus sive epilepticus	<i>Repeated and prolonged epileptic seizures without recovery of consciousness between attacks</i>
79.	Status praesens	<i>The present condition</i>
80.	Ter de die (t. d. d.)	<i>Thrice a day</i>
81.	Unipara	<i>A woman who has given birth once only</i>
82.	Vix conservatrix	<i>The innate strength of an organism enabling it to withstand disease</i>
83.	Vix medicatrix naturae	<i>The natural ability of the organism to prevail over disease without external assistance</i>
84.	Vis vitae (vitālis)	<i>The life force</i>

LITERATURE

1. *Англо-русский* медицинский словарь : более 90 000 терминов / сост. : И. Ю. Марковина, Е. В. Бабченко, З. К. Максимова и др.]. М.: Медицинское информационное агенство, 2008. 896 с.
2. *Волмянская, О. А.* Англо-русский словарь для специалистов-медиков / О. А. Волмянская. Минск : Асар, 2000. 304 с.
3. *Капитула, Л. С.* Латинский язык с основами медицинской терминологии : учеб. пособие / Л. С. Капитула. 2-е изд. Минск : БГМУ, 2003. 241 с.
4. *Международная анатомическая номенклатура* (с официальным списком русских эквивалентов) / под ред. Л. Л. Колесникова. М : Медицина, 2003. 424 с.
5. *Русско-англо-латинский* словарь крылатых слов и выражений / сост. А. С. Альбов. М. : АСТ ; СПб. : Сова, 2006. 606 с.
6. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык : учеб. для студ. вузов / А. З. Цисык. Минск : ТетраСистемс, 2006. 448 с.
7. *Arnaudov, G.* Terminologia medica polyglotta. Медицинская терминология на пяти языках / G. Arnaudov. София : Медицина и физкультура, 1979. 943 с.
8. *Butterworths Medical Dictionary* 2nd ed. London, Boston, Sydney, Wellington, Durban, Toronto : Butterworth, 1979. 1942 p.
9. *Кондратьев, Д. К.* Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology for Medical Students / Д. К. Кондратьев, О. Е. Вылегжанина, Ю. В. Князева. Гродно : ГрГМУ, 2005. 250 с.
10. *Stadman's Medical Dictionary.* 25th ed. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Sydney : Williams and Wilkins, 1989. 1751 p.

CONTENTS

Preface	3
Introduction to the subject	4
Part I. PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION	7
Lesson 1. THE LATIN ALPHABET. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS	7
§ 1. Latin alphabet	7
§ 2. Division of Latin sounds	8
§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels	8
§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combination.....	8
§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants.....	9
§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations.....	10
§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations	11
§ 8. Exercises.....	11
Lesson 2. ACCENT RULES	12
§ 9. Accent in the words consisting of two syllables	12
§10. Accent in polysyllabic words. Length and brevity of the second end syllable	12
§ 11. Long suffixes	13
§ 12. Short suffixes.....	13
§ 13. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology	14
§ 14. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel is not a part of a long or a short suffix	14
§ 15. Some rules of syllable length determination	14
§ 16. The rules of syllable brevity	15
§ 17. Exercises.....	15
Part II. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY	17
Lesson 3. THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUN AND ITS GRAMMAR CATEGORIES	17
§ 18. The Latin terminology in Anatomy and its structure	17
§ 19. Grammar categories of noun	18
§ 20. Dictionary form of nouns	18
§ 21. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it	19
§ 22. Description of declensions.....	19
§ 23. Exercises.....	20
§ 24. Vocabulary to lesson 3	21
Lesson 4. ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT	23
§ 25. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin.....	23
§ 26. 1st group of adjectives.....	23
§ 27. 2nd group of adjectives.....	24

§ 28. Adjective and noun agreement.....	25
§ 29. Exercises	26
§ 30. Vocabulary to lesson 4.....	27
Lesson 5. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES IN ANATOMICAL TERMS.....	30
§ 31. Introductory remarks to the topic.....	30
§ 32. The comparative degree	30
§ 33. Comparative forms in anatomical terminology	31
§ 34. The superlative degree	32
§ 35. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives magnus, a, um and parvus, a, um in Latin anatomical terminology	32
§ 36. Exercises	34
§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 5.....	35
Lesson 6. THE MASCULINE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS. NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS.....	37
§ 38. Masculine names in the third declension from the point of view of their endings in the Nominative and the Genitive.....	37
§ 39. Some explanations to the exceptions presented in the table	37
§ 40. Latin names of muscles performing different functions	38
§ 41. Exercises	39
§ 42. Vocabulary to lesson 6.....	39
Lesson 7. FEMININE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS	41
§ 43. Systematization of the feminine names in the third declension.....	41
§ 44. Exercises	42
§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 7.....	42
Lesson 8. NEUTRAL GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS.....	44
§ 46. Systematization of the neutral names of the third declension.....	44
§ 47. Some explanations on the nouns having similar endings but different gender and declension.....	45
§ 48. Exercises	45
§ 49. Vocabulary to lesson 8.....	46
Lesson 9. NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	48
§ 50. Nominative plural endings of nouns and adjectives	48
§ 51. Abbreviations of Nominative plural forms in anatomical terms.....	49
§ 52. Exercises	49
§ 53. Vocabulary to lesson 9.....	50
Lesson 10. GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.....	51
§ 54. Genitive plural endings of nouns and adjectives	51
§ 55. Exercises	53

§ 56. Vocabulary to lesson 10	53
Lesson 11. ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.....	54
§ 57. Accusative singular and plural endings	54
§ 58. Prepositions used with the Accusative	55
§ 59. Exercises.....	56
§ 60. Vocabulary to lesson 11	56
Lesson 12. ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE	58
§ 61. Ablative and its formation	58
§ 62. Prepositions with the Ablative.....	59
§ 63. Exercises.....	59
§ 64. Vocabulary to lesson 12	60
Lesson 13. PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY	61
§ 65. Prefixation in the word building.....	61
§ 66. Prefixes in anatomical terminology	61
§ 67. Greek and Latin numerals as prefixes	63
§ 68. Exercises.....	63
§ 69. Vocabulary to lesson 14	64
§ 70. Model (Pattern) of the final test in anatomical terminology	66
Latin-english vocabulary	67
English-latin vocabulary.....	73
Part III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY	78
Lesson 14. INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY	78
§ 71. General information on Latin pharmaceutical terminology	78
§ 72. The drug form names.....	79
§ 73 Components of medical plants	80
§ 74. Medicinal plants in pharmaceutical terms	80
§ 75. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names	81
§ 76 Some rules of building multiword pharmaceutical terms.....	82
§ 77. Exercises.....	82
§ 78. Vocabulary to lesson 14	83
Lesson 15. LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD VERB FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES OF MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION	84
§ 79. Current use of Latin in medical prescription	84
§ 80. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription.....	85

§ 81. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription.....	86
§ 82. The structure of a complex medical prescription.....	86
§ 83. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription.....	87
§ 84. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription.....	87
§ 85. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects.....	88
§ 86. Exercises	88
§ 87. Vocabulary to lesson 15	89
Lesson 16. THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF SOME PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION	91
§ 88. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription.....	91
§ 89. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative form	92
§ 90. The prescription of drops in the Accusative form.....	92
§ 91. The prescription of ophthalmic films.....	93
§ 92. The prescription of medical sponges	93
§ 93. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case	94
§ 94. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case	94
§ 95. Morphological roots.....	95
§ 96. Exercises	95
§ 97. Vocabulary to lesson 16.....	96
Lesson 17. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES	98
§ 98. Latin names of chemical elements	98
§ 99. Latin names of acids	99
§ 100. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides.....	100
§ 101. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information	100
§ 102. Exercises	101
§ 103. Vocabulary to lesson 17.....	102
Lesson 18. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS ON THE LABELS OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS	105
§ 104. Latin names of salts, whose anions include oxygen	105
§ 105. Latin names of salts, whose anions do not contain oxygen	105
§ 106. Anion names of basic salts.....	106
§ 107. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts.....	106
§ 108. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information	106
§ 109. Exercises	107
§ 110. Vocabulary to lesson 18.....	108
§ 111. Model (Pattern) of the final test in pharmaceutical terminology	111
Latin-english vocabulary.....	112
English-latin vocabulary	115

Part IV. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY	119
Lesson 19. INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY. ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS.....	119
§ 112. General remarks on Latin clinical terminology	119
§ 113. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms	119
§ 114. Some remarks on the word stressing in clinical names	121
§ 115. Initial and final root elements	121
§ 116. The names of the main branches of clinical medicine.....	122
§ 117. Names of medical specialists.....	122
§ 118. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English.....	123
§ 119. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment.....	123
§ 120. Table of initial root elements.....	124
§ 121. Table of final root elements.....	125
§ 122. Exercises.....	125
§ 123. Vocabulary to lesson 19	126
Lesson 20. ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS	128
§ 124. One-word names of functional disorders.....	128
§ 125. One-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions.....	129
§ 126. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents	130
§ 127. Table of final root elements.....	131
§ 128. Exercises.....	131
§ 129. Vocabulary to lesson 20	132
Lesson 21. NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES.....	135
§ 130. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions.....	135
§ 131. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures	136
§ 132. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures	136
§ 133. Table of initial root elements.....	137
§ 134. Table of final roots	138
§ 135. Exercises.....	138
§ 136. Vocabulary to lesson 21	139
Lesson 22. NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. NAMES OF ABNORMALITIES IN THE STATES OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS	142
§ 137. Names of inflammatory conditions	142
§ 138. Names of morbid conditions of physiological fluids	143
§ 139. Table of initial roots	144

§ 140. Table of final roots	145
§ 141. Exercises	145
§ 142. Vocabulary to lesson 22	146
Lesson 23. ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS	149
§ 143. Names of abnormal adhesions and fissures	149
§ 144. Names of pathological cavities	150
§ 145. Names of tumors	150
§ 146. Names of concretions	151
§ 147. Names of abnormal hardening and softening of the tissues.....	152
§ 148. Table of initial roots	152
§ 149. Table of final roots	153
§ 150. Exercises	153
§ 151. Vocabulary to lesson 23	154
Lesson 24. NAMES OF DEFORMATIONS OF TISSUE CAUSED BY EXOGENOUS FACTORS. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS	157
§ 152. General names of tissue deformations caused by different exogenous factors.....	157
§ 153. Names of surgical operations	158
§ 154. Prefixes widely used in surgical names	158
§ 155. Table of initial roots	159
§ 156. Table of final roots	160
§ 157. Exercises	160
§ 158. Vocabulary to lesson 24	161
Lesson 25. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 1	165
§ 159. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms	165
§ 160. Exercises	166
§ 161. Vocabulary to lesson 25	166
Lesson 26. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 2	168
§ 162. Exercises	168
§ 163. Vocabularies to lesson 26	169
Lesson 27. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 3	171
§ 164. Exercises	171
§ 165. Vocabulary to lesson 27	171
§ 166. Model (Pattern) of the final test in clinical terminology.....	173
Latin-english vocabulary.....	174
English-latin vocabulary	184
The international students' anthem "Gaudeamus"	199
Latin proverbs and quotations.....	200
Medical professional impressions	203
Literature	206